

# GERMAN PROSE COMPOSITION

v

CHILES







# GERMAN PROSE COMPOSITION

EXERCISES IN GERMAN COMPOSITION AND  
CONVERSATION, WITH A REVIEW OF THE  
ELEMENTS OF GERMAN GRAMMAR

BY

JAMES A. CHILES, PH.D.

INSTRUCTOR IN GERMAN IN THE UNIVERSITY OF WISCONSIN

GINN AND COMPANY

BOSTON · NEW YORK · CHICAGO · LONDON

COPYRIGHT, 1914, BY  
JAMES A. CHILES

---

ALL RIGHTS RESERVED

514-8

**The Athenæum Press**  
GINN AND COMPANY • PRO-  
PRIETORS • BOSTON • U.S.A.

## PREFACE

The present volume will be found suitable for the second and third years in German in the high school or for the second year in German in college. Part One aims to guide the student in a systematic and thorough review of the elements of German grammar in connection with exercises in composition and conversation. It is arranged according to topics and is intended to concentrate the student's attention upon the most important forms and constructions. It can be used with any German grammar.

Part Two consists of English exercises based on German models. The exercises throughout are couched in the practical vocabulary of everyday life and readily lend themselves to translation into idiomatic German. Each lesson contains two sets of exercises, making the book adaptable to the varying needs of different classes.

The English-German vocabulary has been so prepared that the student should have no difficulty in selecting in each instance the proper German word.

The author wishes to acknowledge his indebtedness to his wife, Marie Duenckel Chiles, for assistance in the preparation of the exercises, and to Professor E. C. Roedder, of the University of Wisconsin, for his kindness in reading the proofs.

J. A. C.



Digitized by the Internet Archive  
in 2023 with funding from  
Kahle/Austin Foundation

# CONTENTS

## PART ONE

| LESSON                                                                                      | PAGE |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|
| I. Dieser-WORDS AND fein-WORDS. Haben, sein, AND werden . . . . .                           | I    |
| II. WEAK CONJUGATION. USE OF TENSES . . . . .                                               | 4    |
| III. STRONG CONJUGATION. IRREGULAR VERBS. USE OF TENSES (CONTINUED) . . . . .               | 7    |
| IV. DECLENSION OF NOUNS. PROPER NAMES . . . . .                                             | 10   |
| V. ORDER OF WORDS. CONJUNCTIONS . . . . .                                                   | 13   |
| VI. ORDER OF WORDS (CONTINUED) . . . . .                                                    | 16   |
| VII. RELATIVE AND INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS. Der AS DEMONSTRATIVE . . . . .                    | 18   |
| VIII. PERSONAL PRONOUNS. CARDINAL NUMBERS . . . . .                                         | 22   |
| IX. DECLENSION OF ADJECTIVES . . . . .                                                      | 25   |
| X. COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES AND ADVERBS . . . . .                                           | 28   |
| XI. POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS. ORDINAL AND FRACTIONAL NUMBERS . . . . .                           | 31   |
| XII. INSEPARABLE COMPOUND VERBS. PREPOSITIONS . . . . .                                     | 34   |
| XIII. SEPARABLE COMPOUND VERBS. DOUBTFUL PREFIXES . . . . .                                 | 37   |
| XIV. IMPERSONAL AND REFLEXIVE VERBS. INTENSIVE AND RECIPROCAL PRONOUNS . . . . .            | 40   |
| XV. PRESENT, PAST, AND FUTURE TENSES OF THE MODAL AUXILIARIES . . . . .                     | 43   |
| XVI. PERFECT TENSES OF THE MODAL AUXILIARIES . . . . .                                      | 46   |
| XVII. CONJUGATION OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE AND CONDITIONAL MOODS. CONDITIONAL SENTENCES . . . . . | 49   |
| XVIII. THE SUBJUNCTIVE (CONTINUED) . . . . .                                                | 52   |
| XIX. SUBJUNCTIVE OF INDIRECT DISCOURSE . . . . .                                            | 55   |
| XX. PASSIVE VOICE . . . . .                                                                 | 59   |
| REVIEW QUESTIONS . . . . .                                                                  | 63   |

## PART TWO

| LESSON                                        | PAGE |
|-----------------------------------------------|------|
| XXI. Ein zufriedener Kunde . . . . .          | 67   |
| XXII. Eine pfiffige Antwort . . . . .         | 69   |
| XXIII. Unverschämt . . . . .                  | 72   |
| XXIV. Wurst wider Wurst . . . . .             | 74   |
| XXV. Gut bezahlt . . . . .                    | 77   |
| XXVI. Ein schlauer Freund . . . . .           | 80   |
| XXVII. Ein bedauernswerter Mann . . . . .     | 82   |
| XXVIII. Der spöttische Kunde . . . . .        | 85   |
| XXIX. Der war klug . . . . .                  | 87   |
| XXX. Eht weiblich . . . . .                   | 90   |
| XXXI. Sie wußte es doch . . . . .             | 93   |
| XXXII. Der gefällige Bäcker . . . . .         | 96   |
| XXXIII. Ein geborener Mathematiker . . . . .  | 99   |
| XXXIV. Unmöglich . . . . .                    | 102  |
| XXXV. Durch Erfahrung wird man klug . . . . . | 105  |
| XXXVI. Ein Brief . . . . .                    | 108  |
| XXXVII. Briefe . . . . .                      | 111  |
| XXXVIII. Deutschland . . . . .                | 114  |
| VOCABULARIES . . . . .                        | 117  |
| STRONG AND IRREGULAR VERBS . . . . .          | 171  |

# GERMAN PROSE COMPOSITION

## PART ONE

### LESSON I

**Dieſer-WORDS AND fein-WORDS. Haben, fein, AND werden**

**Lernen Sie außwendig:**

1. Er iſt Advokat. *He is a lawyer.*
2. Was haſt du in der Hand? *What have you in your hand?*
3. Es wird kalt. *It is turning cold.*
4. Er wird alt. *He is getting old.*

#### A

Review the inflection (1) of the dieſer-words: dieſer, jener, jeder, mancher, ſolcher, welcher, and der; (2) of the fein-words: fein, ein, mein, dein, ſein, and the other poſſeſſive adjectives. Note that the fein-words are defective, having no endings in the nominative ſingular masculine and in the nominative and accuſative ſingular neuter. Otherwiſe they have the ſame endings as the dieſer-words. Compare the ſentences B 1-3.

Obſerve the following inſtances in which German differs from Engliſh in the uſe of the articles: (1) The indefinite article is omitted before a **predicate noun** denoting occupation, rank, or ſtation in life, if the noun is not preceded by an adjective. Cf. B 4. (2) The definite article may be uſed in

place of a possessive adjective when there is no doubt as to who the possessor is. Cf. B 5. (3) The definite article is used with abstract nouns and other nouns taken in a general sense. Cf. B 6. (4) The definite article is used with names of seasons, months, days, and streets. Cf. B 7. (5) The definite article is sometimes used with proper names. This use will be treated in Lesson IV.

Review the conjugation of *haben*, *sein*, and *werden*, omitting the subjunctive and conditional moods. Cf. B 8, 9.

## B

*Translate:* 1. Kein Tisch, dieser Tisch; ein Tisch, jener Tisch; mein Tisch, jeder Tisch; unser Tisch, welcher Tisch. 2. Sein Haus, jenes Haus; kein Haus, dieses Haus; euer Haus, jedes Haus; ihr Haus, welches Haus. 3. Deine Tische, manche Tische; keine Tische, diese Tische; unsere Häuser, solche Häuser. 4. Hans will Soldat werden. 5. Karl, tue den Bleistift nicht in den Mund! 6. Das Leben ist kurz. 7. Die Schule fängt im September an. 8. Er ist alt. Er wird alt. Er wird nie alt werden. 9. Es war sehr kalt. Es wurde sehr kalt. Es ist sehr kalt gewesen. Es ist sehr kalt geworden. Es war sehr kalt geworden.

## C

*Answer with a complete German sentence:*

1. Ist dein Vater Kaufmann?
2. Ist Ihr Bruder ein erfahrener Arzt?
3. Was willst du werden?
4. Welches ist wertvoller, das Eisen oder das Gold?
5. Gehst du am Sonntag in die Kirche?
6. Was hast du in der Hand?
7. Was hast du in der Tasche?

## D

*Translate:* 1. This pencil, his pencil; every pencil, my pencil; which pencil, our pencil; the pencil, a pencil. 2. That book, my book; the book, a book; this book, her book; every book, our book. 3. These books, her books; each pen, my pen; with this pencil, with his pencil. 4. It is turning hot. It is hot. 5. He was very sick. He became very sick. He will get sick. 6. My father is a teacher. 7. He is a famous lawyer. 8. She is kindness itself. 9. Spring will soon be here. 10. Give me your hand. 11. She shook her head. 12. He stuck his hand into his pocket. 13. He lives on Rhein street (Rheinstraße). 14. He left on Friday. 15. She stamped her foot.

## E

*Translate:* 1. Every pupil in this class is industrious. 2. It suddenly turned very cold. 3. He shrugged his shoulders. 4. My brother intends to become a physician. 5. She threatened the child with her finger. 6. Her father was a tailor. 7. I saw him yesterday on Ludwig street. 8. He clenched his fist. 9. In winter the days are short and the nights long. 10. February is a cold month. 11. I closed my eyes. 12. Love is blind. 13. Please do not come on Wednesday. 14. He sticks his nose into everything. 15. Burg street is a famous old street. 16. I want to be (werden) a sailor. 17. Man is mortal. 18. He gnashed his teeth. 19. Their uncle is a rich manufacturer. 20. Open your mouth.

## LESSON II

## WEAK CONJUGATION. USE OF TENSES

## Lernen Sie auswendig :

1. Wer hat es dir gesagt? *Who told you so?*
2. Das habe ich nicht gesagt. *I did not say that.*
3. Ich bin gleich wieder da. *I shall be back at once.*
4. Es wird wohl spät sein. *It is probably late.*

## A

Review the conjugation of the weak verb, active voice, omitting the subjunctive and conditional moods.

Note (1) verbs with stems ending in **d** or **t**; in **m** or **n** preceded by a consonant; in an **f**-sound. Cf. B 1, 2. (2) Verbs ending in **eln** or **ern**. Cf. B 3. (3) Verbs ending in **ieren**. Cf. B 4.

What verbs take **sein** as auxiliary in the perfect tenses? Cf. B 5, 6.

Observe that German does not have the progressive and emphatic tense-forms. Cf. D 2, 3.

German often uses the perfect tense, where English uses the past, for isolated, disconnected statements in past time. This is especially true of the spoken language. Cf. B 7, 8.

The use of the present tense for the future is much more common in German than in English, especially in sentences containing an adverb that expresses the idea of futurity. Cf. B 9.

Note the use of the future to express a present probability, and of the future perfect to denote a past probability. Cf. B 10, 11.

## B

1. Er lebt, er redet, er wohnt, er zeichnet; er lebte, er redete, er wohnte, er zeichnete; er hat gelebt, er hat geredet, er hat gewohnt, er hat gezeichnet. 2. Du liebst deine Freunde und du hassst deine Feinde. 3. Ich lächle immer, wenn sie lächelt. 4. Er hatte in Leipzig studiert. 5. Er ist nach Berlin gereist. 6. Er war sogleich nach Hause geeilt. 7. Ich habe es ihm gestern gesagt. 8. Wir haben es erst heute morgen gehört. 9. Bleib schön hier, mein Kind; in einem Augenblick bin ich wieder da. 10. Er wird wohl schon hier sein. 11. Du wirst wohl gehört haben, daß er nicht kommt.

## C

1. Verst du gern Deutsch?
2. Arbeitest du gern?
3. Grüßest du ihn, wenn du ihm begegnest?
4. Auf wen wartete er?
5. Wie lange haben Sie gestern auf mich gewartet?
6. In welchem Jahrhundert hat Kolumbus gelebt?
7. Wer hat dich Deutsch gelehrt?
8. Wer hat die Tür geöffnet?
9. Wem ist der Hund gefolgt?
10. Wann kommst du wieder?

## D

1. He works, he plays, he opens (öffnen), he learns; he worked, he played, he opened, he learned; he has worked, he has played, he has opened, he has learned. 2. He is playing. Does he play? Was he playing? Did he play? 3. He will be playing. Has he been playing? He had been

playing. 4. Do you (*du*) wish me to (= that I) change it? 5. Why do you (*du*) hate her so? 6. Do not smile (*use the three imperative forms*). 7. He has not corrected the mistakes in his exercise. 8. He has climbed over the fence (*acc.*). 9. Her horse had followed her home. 10. Did you take (*perf.*) a walk yesterday? 11. This morning we worked two hours. 12. I shall come to-morrow at eight o'clock. 13. He is probably sick. 14. He probably has not seen him yet. 15. We shall soon be there.

## E

1. Who drew that? 2. He has studied at the University of (*omit*) Berlin. 3. She is probably thirty years old. 4. What did he say to you? 5. Wait for me, children. I shall be ready immediately. 6. What are you looking for? I am looking for my knife. 7. He has aged very much (*omit*) in the last year; he has become quite gray. 8. What were you saying, Mrs. Smith? 9. I doubt whether he can do it. 10. How did he spell it? 11. He has probably had no chance to talk with her about it (*darüber*). 12. Jack, get me a glass of (*omit*) water. 13. Hurry (*Beile dich*), else we shall miss the train. 14. What has become of your friend Miller? 15. He probably knows nothing about it (*davon*). 16. I regret very much (*omit*) that you cannot come. 17. I met him this morning on Ritter street. 18. Yesterday I worked hard all day. 19. You are probably right. 20. Have you heard from him lately?

## LESSON III

## STRONG CONJUGATION. IRREGULAR VERBS.

## USE OF TENSES (continued)

## Lernen Sie auswendig:

1. Das weiß ich schon lange. *I have known that for a long time.*
2. Sind Sie schon lange hier? *Have you been here long?*
3. Ich kenne ihn schon seit Jahren. *I have known him for years.*
4. Seit wann bist du hier? *How long have you been here?*

## A

Review the conjugation of the strong verb, active voice, omitting the subjunctive and conditional moods.

Note those strong verbs whose stem vowel is **a** or **e**. Cf. B 1-3.

Review the conjugation of the irregular verbs *brennen*, *fennen*, etc. Cf. B 4, 5.

Note (1) use of the present tense for the English perfect to denote what has been and still is; cf. B 6, 8. (2) Use of the past for the English pluperfect to denote what had been and still was at a given point in past time; cf. B 7, 9.

The exclamation point is generally used after imperative sentences. Cf. B 2, 3.

## B

1. Du schreibst, ihr schreibt, du bittest, ihr bittet, du hältst, ihr haltet, du siehst, ihr seht, du hilfst, ihr helft; sie schrieb, sie bat, sie hielt, sie sah; wir haben geschrieben, wir haben gehalten, wir

haben gesehen. 2. Falle nicht, Karl! 3. Gretchen, hilf deiner Mutter! 4. Der Fremde wandte sich zu mir und nannte mich beim Namen. 5. Ich kenne ihn sehr gut, aber ich weiß nicht, wo er wohnt. 6. Ich warte schon [seit]<sup>1</sup> zwei Stunden auf ihn. 7. Als du mich gestern sahst, wartete ich schon [seit] zwei Stunden auf ihn. 8. Er wohnt schon zwei Jahre in Berlin. 9. Das Gebäude brannte schon seit einer halben Stunde, ehe die Feuerwehr ankam. 10. Das ist schon lange her.

## C

1. Läufst du gern Schlittschuh?
2. Gehst du gern spazieren?
3. Schwimmen Sie gern?
4. Spielt du lieber Fußball oder Schlagball?
5. Kennen Sie das Lied vom Heidenröslein?
6. Weißt du es auswendig?
7. Wie lange wohnt ihr schon auf dem Lande?
8. Wie lange habt ihr auf dem Lande gewohnt?
9. Wie lange saßest du schon da, als ich vorbeikam?
10. Wer ist vom Baume heruntergefallen?

## D

1. He is falling, he has fallen; he is dying, he died yesterday; she is cutting, she cuts, does she cut? he was writing, he wrote this morning. 2. He advises me to stay at home. 3. Give that to me, Herman. 4. Wash your face, Dorothy. 5. Please be seated. 6. I have been working for two hours and am not at all tired. 7. Yesterday I worked two hours in the garden. 8. He had been in Berlin a week

<sup>1</sup> Letters, parts of words, or words inclosed in square brackets [ ] may be omitted.

when I arrived. 9. He had already been in Berlin twice. 10. He has been sleeping for three hours. Wake him up. 11. I slept only three hours last night. 12. Did you call me? 13. Take my knife, Paul. You will find it on the table in the study. 14. My uncle in Dresden is a merchant. 15. He has probably forgotten it.

## E

1. He asked me for a cup of (*omit*) coffee. 2. We forced him to do it. 3. Do you know him? Do you know how old he is? 4. Eat your bread, Freddy, and drink your milk. 5. Where (*Wo hin*) are you going? I am going home. 6. How long did he stay last night? 7. They have not come yet. 8. What does it smell like (*What . . . like = Was nach*)? It smells like vinegar. 9. Throw that away, William. 10. Do not speak so loud, Mary; father is sleeping. 11. How long have you been studying German? 12. How long did you study German? 13. He had been dead an hour when the doctor came. 14. Never in his life had he seen so many people. 15. What are you thinking of? I was just thinking of Uncle Henry. 16. He has probably not thought of it (*darum*) again. 17. How long has he been sick? 18. What have you been doing all day? I have been reading and writing. 19. When did you see him last (*zum letzten Male*)? 20. I had known her family for many years.

## LESSON IV

## DECLENSION OF NOUNS. PROPER NAMES

## Lernen Sie auswendig:

1. Hast du Fritz gesehen? *Have you seen Fred?*
2. Der kleine Heinrich ist krank. *Little Henry is sick.*
3. Deutschland und die Schweiz sind Nachbarländer. *Germany and Switzerland are neighboring countries.*

## A

Review the declension of nouns. Bear in mind two points : (1) the question of inflection, that is, how the different cases in each declension are formed ; (2) what nouns belong to each declension.

Proper names add *s* in the genitive singular. Cf. B 1, 2. If the nominative ends in an *s*-sound, names of persons take *cus* in the genitive,<sup>1</sup> while names of places substitute *von* with the dative for the genitive. Cf. B 3, 4.

If a proper name is preceded by an adjective, it must take the definite article. Cf. B 5, 6.<sup>2</sup>

If no adjective precedes, names of persons and places do not, as a rule, take the definite article. Cf. B 1-4. However, it is sometimes used before names of persons, especially when it is desirable to indicate the case, and it is regularly used before feminine names of countries. Cf. B 7, 8.

<sup>1</sup> Family names ending in an *s*-sound indicate the genitive by the apostrophe: *Wuß' Werke*.

<sup>2</sup> When names of persons and places are preceded by an article, they usually drop the *s* of the genitive if the genitive follows the noun on which it depends: *der Gut des kleinen Karl*.

## B

1. Karls Mütze und Maries Hut liegen in meinem Zimmer auf dem Boden. 2. Die großen Flüsse Deutschlands sind nicht so lang wie die großen Flüsse Amerikas. 3. Frizens Bücher sind in meinem Pulte. 4. Die Straßen von Paris sind sehr breit und lang. 5. Der kleine Karl weinte bitterlich. 6. Das alte Rom war eine mächtige Stadt. 7. Was gab Wilhelm der Marie? 8. Die Schweiz ist eine Republik.

## C

1. Hast du Heinrichs Vater gesehen?
2. Wo ist Elisabeths Mantel?
3. Wo ist Hansens Rock?
4. Hast du Helenes Handschuhe gefunden?
5. Sind die Berge Deutschlands sehr hoch?
6. Warum weint Marie?
7. Ist der alte Jakob schon wieder zurückgekommen?
8. Wie lange wohnt er schon in Deutschland?
9. Bist du je in der Türkei gewesen?

## D

1. Charles has Herman's knife. 2. Have you read Schiller's "Wallenstein"? 3. Mary's mother is sick. 4. Max's uncle is here. 5. Is Charles sick? 6. Little Leo is in the country at his uncle's. 7. Gertrude is now living in Switzerland. 8. The universities of Germany are very different from (ganz anders als) the universities of America. 9. Dorothy had never been in France. 10. In what part of Texas does he live? 11. I shall spend the winter in sunny Italy. 12. George is a lawyer and has been living in Cologne

three years. 13. What did Paul tell Bertha? 14. Frank's father will be here to-morrow. 15. Clara's uncle died yesterday.

## E

1. Catherine has bought a new hat. 2. There goes Martha's brother. 3. Old John has been with (bei) us twenty years. 4. Have you met Felix's sister? 5. Prussia, Bavaria, and Saxony are kingdoms. 6. Germany, Austria, and Russia are empires. 7. France and Switzerland are republics. 8. Last year we read Lessing's "Minna von Barnhelm," Schiller's "Wilhelm Tell," and Goethe's "Hermann und Dorothea." 9. Why does she not like William? 10. Louise visited her Aunt Frances last week. 11. Frank is studying medicine in Vienna. 12. I borrowed Jack's umbrella. 13. To-morrow is Anna's birthday. 14. Mary's father lives on Müller street. 15. Poor Fred did not know what to do (= what he should do). 16. Rudolph sent Herman a book, Adele a doll, and Freddy a rocking-horse. 17. Who is that boy over there (dort drüben)? That is Mr. (Herrn) Smith's son. 18. Modern Berlin is a beautiful city. 19. He sent me a postal card from (aus) Turkey. 20. Do not worry (Mache dir keine Gedanken), George has probably already attended to it.

## LESSON V

## ORDER OF WORDS. CONJUNCTIONS

Lernen Sie auswendig:

1. Ich habe es nicht so gemeint. *I did not mean it that way.*
2. Daß weiß ich besser. *I know better.*
3. Einfach weil ich nicht will. *Simply because I do not want to.*
4. Es ist schade, daß du nicht mitgehen kannst. *It is too bad that you cannot go with us.*

## A

The verb<sup>1</sup> in **principal clauses**: (1) The subject may stand first and the verb second. This is called the **normal** order. Cf. B 1. (2) But an object, an adverb, or any other predicate word may be put first, in which case the subject follows the verb. This is called the **inverted** order. Cf. B 2.

The verb in **subordinate clauses** stands last. This is called the **transposed** order. Cf. B 3.

The **participle** and the **infinitive** in **principal clauses** stand last. Cf. B 4.

The **participle** and the **infinitive** in **subordinate clauses** stand next to the last. Cf. B 5.

When a subordinate clause precedes a principal clause, the subject of the principal clause follows the verb. The subordinate clause has the value of an adverb or of an object, and causes inversion in the principal clause just as any other adverb or object does when placed first. Cf. B 3, 5.

<sup>1</sup> *Verb* means the personal or finite part of the verb only. In questions the position of the verb is the same as in English. Our attention will, therefore, be confined to the declarative sentence.

Observe that subordinate clauses are set off by commas. Cf. B 3, 5.

Review the coördinating and the subordinating conjunctions. Note in particular those English conjunctions that have various equivalents in German, as *but*, *when*, *since*, *as*,<sup>1</sup> etc.

Distinguish between *after*, *before*, *for*, and *since* as prepositions and as conjunctions.<sup>2</sup> Cf. D 1-3.

## B

1. Sie singt sehr schön. 2. Morgen gehe ich nicht in die Schule. 3. Obgleich es stark regnete, machte er doch einen Spaziergang. 4. Ich habe mir eine Schreibmaschine gekauft. 5. Da du deine Aufgabe noch nicht gemacht hast, darfst du nicht spielen.

## C

1. Grüßt er dich, wenn du ihm begegnest?
2. Grüßte er dich gestern, als du ihm begegnetest?
3. Weißt du, wann er kommt?
4. Was machtet ihr, nachdem ich euch verließ?
5. Glaubst du, daß er nicht kommen wird?
6. Wissen Sie, was er mir gesagt hat?
7. Warum hast du es mir nicht gleich gesagt? Weil du Angst gehabt hast?
8. Was willst du nun machen, da er nicht gekommen ist?
9. Wußten Sie das schon, ehe ich es Ihnen sagte?
10. Können Sie nicht warten, bis er fertig ist?

<sup>1</sup> The student must be very careful in translating *as*. It has several meanings and, therefore, several equivalents in German. Consult the English-German vocabulary under *as*.

<sup>2</sup> Note that *after*, *before*, and *since* are also used as adverbs, as *I have not seen him since*, *ich habe ihn seither nicht gesehen*.

## D

1. He has been here since yesterday. 2. I have not seen him since you were here. 3. Since you are not going, I shall stay at home too. 4. There comes Mr. Miller. 5. As soon as you do that I shall send you the money. 6. At that time they were living in the country, as I have already told you. 7. After they had gone (*fört waren*), we went to the concert. 8. After two o'clock I can go with you. 9. I have nothing for you. 10. Say nothing to him about it (*ðavon*), for it is none of his business. 11. When I saw him yesterday he was still mad about it (*ðarüber*). 12. When Frank comes, see to it (*ſieh zu*) that he has a good time. 13. Do you know when Fred will arrive? 14. He has not done it yet, but he will do it to-morrow. 15. He did not stay at home, but he went to the theater.

## E

1. I cannot come before ten o'clock. 2. Before I could answer he was gone (*ſchon fört*). 3. He continually has a cold because he does not take care of himself. 4. Although they were good friends, still they quarreled occasionally. 5. While they were gone (*fört*), their house burned down. 6. If we wait until to-morrow, it might (*fönnſte*) be too late. 7. As soon as you are through, let me know (= know it). 8. I waited an hour for her, but she did not come. 9. He stayed until it got dark. 10. Ask him whether he is hungry. 11. As long as you are with (*bei*) me, nothing will happen (*pres.*) to you. 12. When I was in Berlin I saw the German emperor. 13. Since she is here, I cannot work any more. 14. When you see him, give him my regards. 15. He is not in Germany, but in Switzerland. 16. Since you are against it

(dagegen), I shall not do it. 17. When and where did you see him? 18. After he had done it, he was sorry for it (reute es ihn). 19. Even if he does not come, we shall not miss him. 20. He has been here since last week.

## LESSON VI

### ORDER OF WORDS (continued)

#### Lernen Sie auswendig:

1. Hat man Geld, so hat man Freunde. *If you have money, you have friends.*
2. Was du doch sagst! *You don't say so!*
3. Er ist heute nicht zu Hause. *He is not at home to-day.*

#### A

The subordinating conjunctions daß and wenn, and ob in the combination als ob, may be omitted. How does their omission affect the order? Cf. B 1-3.

In exclamatory sentences either the inverted or the transposed order may be used. Cf. B 4-6.

Other points in regard to order: (1) Adverbs of time precede adverbs of place. Cf. B 7. (2) The indirect object generally precedes the direct object except when the direct object is a personal or reflexive pronoun. Cf. B 8, 9.

#### B

1. Ich weiß, du hast recht. 2. Hätte ich mehr Zeit, so würde ich es tun. 3. Sie tat, als sähe sie mich nicht. 4. Was du nicht alles weißt! 5. Wie schön du das gemacht hast! 6. Wie hab' ich dich lieb! 7. Er wird morgen da sein. 8. Ich gab dem Manne die Feder. 9. Ich gab sie dem Manne.

## C

1. Warum warst du gestern nicht in der Schule?
2. Gehst du heute abend in die Kirche?
3. Warum tun Sie, als wüßten Sie nichts davon?
4. Wer hat Karl das gesagt?
5. Wer hat es Karl gesagt?
6. Kam es dir nicht vor, als wäre er sehr gealtert?
7. Willst du mir dein Pferd verkaufen?
8. Kannst du es mir auf ein paar Tage leihen?
9. Wann kommen Sie des Abends nach Hause?
10. Wirßt du morgen nachmittag zu Hause sein?

## D

1. I believe you did (*perf.*) that.
2. How I should like to (Wie gern möchte ich) go along!
3. How cold it has turned!
4. Did he really say that to you?
5. If it rains to-morrow, I shall stay at home.
6. You look as if you were (*past subjv.*) sick.
7. He acted as if he had never seen (*pluperf. subjv.*) a train before.
8. I shall be there at two o'clock.
9. I lived in Leipzig two years.
10. She has been living in Paris for ten years.
11. When I lived in Berlin six years ago, I frequently attended the opera.
12. What a pretty dress you have on!
13. Oh, how charming she looks!
14. I fear you cannot do it.
15. Who gave them to you, Mary?

## E

1. He ate as if he were almost starved.
2. I saw him down town yesterday.
3. What a big boy you have become!
4. If he does not come to-day, he will surely come to-morrow.
5. Jack, can you lend me ten marks? I shall pay you (= them to you) back on Friday.
6. I hope you will come again soon.

7. How early it gets dark now! 8. It seems to me as if somebody had called me. 9. He gave his mother a new dress and his father a box of (*omit*) cigars. 10. Since you are not going to school to-day, you can take care of your little sister. 11. How lonely I am since you have gone (*fort bist*)! 12. If he oversleeps himself, he will miss the train. 13. He knows I have no money. 14. I shall be in my room after four o'clock. 15. After she had talked with him about it (*darüber*), she felt relieved. 16. Oh, how sorry I am for him! 17. If you tell me the truth, I shall not punish you. 18. He felt (*Ich war*) as if he never wanted to (*möchte*) see her again. 19. It was not Fred, but his brother, whom you saw at church yesterday. 20. I cannot go to the ball game this afternoon because I must go (*omit*) to the dentist.

## LESSON VII

### RELATIVE AND INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS

#### Der AS DEMONSTRATIVE

#### Lernen Sie auswendig:

1. Was gibt's? *What is the matter?*
2. Weißt du was? *Do you know what?*
3. Wer sonst? *Who else?*
4. Das ist es ja eben! *That is just the trouble.*
5. Das weiß ich nicht mehr. *I do not remember.*

#### A

Review the declension of the relative pronouns.

Note that both *der* and *welcher* may refer either to persons or to things. Except in the genitive, where the forms of *der* are required, there is, generally speaking, a free choice

between *der* and *welcher*. However, in the spoken language *der* is more commonly used. Cf. B 1-3.

The relative is never omitted in German. Cf. D 9.

Note the use of *wer* and *was* as **compound** relatives, that is, without an antecedent. Cf. B 4. *Wer* cannot be used as a simple relative after a definite, expressed antecedent. *Was* is so used only to a limited extent, namely, when the antecedent is a neuter pronoun, or a neuter adjective (especially a superlative), or a sentence. Cf. B 5.

Review the declension of the interrogative pronouns. Cf. B 6.

What are the interrogative adjectives? Cf. B 7. Note that the English interrogative adjectives *which* and *what* are both translated by *welcher*. Cf. D 12.

Besides its use as definite article and relative pronoun, *der* is also used as demonstrative adjective and pronoun. Cf. B 8. It is often to be translated in English by an emphatic personal pronoun. Cf. latter part of B 8.

Note the translation in German of relative, interrogative, and demonstrative pronouns when they are governed by a preposition and do not refer to a living object. Cf. B 9-11. For relative pronouns the use of such adverbial compounds is optional; likewise for interrogative *was* if the preposition governs the accusative, but the adverbial compounds are commonly used if the preposition takes the dative; in the case of the demonstrative the adverbial compounds should be used.

## B

1. Der Hund, der (welcher) uns eben angebellt hat, gehört meinem Onkel. 2. Die Dame, die (welche) Sie gestern gesehen haben, ist meine Tante. 3. Der Mann, dessen Haus ich gekauft

habe, wird nach New York ziehen. 4. Wer das sagt, lügt nicht. Was er sagt, ist wahr. 5. Ist das alles, was du von ihm weißt? Das Schönste, was ich in Köln sah, war der berühmte Dom. 6. Wer hat das gesagt? Was hat er dir gesagt? Wem hast du es gegeben? 7. Welches Pferd hast du verkauft? Was für ein Tisch ist das? 8. Den Mann kenne ich nicht. Geh zu Fritz; der wird es machen. 9. Die Feder, womit (mit der, mit welcher) ich schreibe, ist nicht sehr gut. 10. Wovon sprichst du? Von wem sprichst du? Woran (An was) denkst du eben? An wen denkst du eben? 11. Daran erkenne ich ihn sicher.

## C

1. Ist das der Mann, von dem (von welchem) du mir erzähltest?
2. Wo ist die Frau, deren Tochter krank ist?
3. Wem gehört das Buch, das (welches) auf dem Tische liegt?
4. Kennst du die Sprichwörter: „Wer zuletzt lacht, lacht am besten“ und „Was von Herzen kommt, geht zu Herzen“?
5. Glaubst du gar nichts, was er sagt?
6. Was für Bücher habt ihr gekauft?
7. Welchen Bleistift wollen Sie haben? den da, oder diesen?
8. Wo ist Karl? Bleibt der nie zu Hause?
9. Ist das das Bett, worauf (auf dem, auf welchem) er lag?
10. Womit hast du geschrieben?

## D

1. The last thing (*omit*) that he said to me was, "Do not tell (= tell it) mother." 2. That is all that I have. 3. What is the matter with you? 4. Whoever has time ought to go. 5. He who is blind cannot see. 6. Whose book have you? 7. The man whose dog bit you lives in the country. 8. The

man who lives in that house is a famous lawyer. 9. The shirt you gave me is very pretty. 10. Here is the table on which my books were lying. 11. With what did he strike you? On what did you fall? 12. What book do you mean? Which book do you mean? What kind of book is that? 13. Who? Charles? What does he (*demonstrative*) know about that? 14. I cannot bear that fellow. 15. You may (mögen) say what you please (wollen), I do not believe that he did it.

## E

1. He has bad luck with everything that he undertakes. 2. What do you take (halten) me for? 3. What kind of hat will you wear this evening? 4. Whose horse has he? I do not know whose horse he has. 5. The man whose house burned down last night is very poor. 6. Whoever has not prepared his lessons must stay in after school. 7. Has Mary not come home yet? I should like to (möchte doch) know where she (*demonstrative*) is (bleibt). 8. The house in which we are now living is not large enough for our family. 9. Which hat did you buy? 10. In that case I shall stay at home. 11. The books you ordered have not arrived yet. 12. I am not satisfied with that. 13. For (Für) what reason did he leave the city? 14. He who lies will also steal. 15. Who is that lady over there? That is Mrs. Smith. 16. That is the only thing (*omit*) that we can do. 17. He probably knows who did it. 18. I know a man who will do it. 19. That is a pretty dress you have on. 20. Here is the book I was telling you about last night.

## LESSON VIII

## PERSONAL PRONOUNS. CARDINAL NUMBERS

## Lernen Sie auswendig:

1. Ich bin's. *It is I.*
2. Es sind Freunde von mir. *They are friends of mine.*
3. Ich sollte es meinen. *I should think so.*
4. Ich weiß nichts davon. *I know nothing about it.*

## A

Review the declension of the personal pronouns.

Note carefully the different meanings of *ſie* and *ihr*. Cf. B 1.

Remember that the personal pronoun in the third person must agree in gender and number with the noun to which it refers. Cf. B 2.

If a personal pronoun is governed by a preposition and does not refer to a living object, an adverbial compound of *da* (*dar* before vowels) with the preposition is substituted. Cf. B 3, 4.

When a personal pronoun of the first or second person is the antecedent of the relative *der*, it is commonly repeated after the relative if the latter is the subject of its clause. The verb of the relative clause then agrees with the antecedent in person. Cf. B 5. If the personal pronoun is not thus repeated, the verb of the relative clause is in the third person.

Note the use of *eſ* as expletive and in expressions of identity. Cf. B 6-8.

The indefinite pronoun *man* may often be rendered by an English personal pronoun. Cf. B 9.

Review the cardinal numbers. Cf. B 10, 11.

## B

1. Er sieht sie; sie sieht sie; sie sehen Sie; ihr habt es ihr gegeben; ihr Vater und Ihr Onkel sind alte Freunde. 2. Dieser Rock ist so gut wie neu, ich habe ihn nur einmal getragen. 3. Was denkst du davon? Was denkst du von ihm? 4. Hier sind deine Federn, ich kann nicht damit schreiben. 5. Du, der du mir das gesagt hast, bist schuld daran. 6. Es war einmal ein alter König; der hatte eine schöne Tochter. 7. Ich bin es; Sie waren es; er ist es. 8. Es sind nicht meine Kinder, die das getan haben. 9. Man (They) sagt, er wollte sterben. 10. Es ist erst vier Uhr; ein Viertel [auf] fünf *or* ein Viertel nach vier; drei Viertel [auf] vier *or* ein Viertel vor vier; um halb vier; zehn Minuten nach acht; zwanzig Minuten vor elf. 11. Zwei und drei ist fünf; drei mal vier ist zwölf; sieben weniger vier ist drei; acht geteilt durch zwei ist vier.

## C

1. Wo ist mein Bleistift? Hast du ihn nicht vorhin gehabt?
2. Wo ist der neue Schaukelstuhl? Haben Sie noch nicht darin gegessen?
3. Habt ihr sie ihr gegeben?
4. Was weiß man von ihm?
5. Waren es Ihre Hühner, die er tötete?
6. Bist du es, Hans?
7. Kannst du, der du ihn so gut kennst, mir nicht sagen, wo er wohnt?
8. Wieviel Uhr ist es?
9. In welchem Jahre sind Sie geboren?
10. Wieviel ist zehn und zwanzig? Sechs mal fünfundzwanzig? Zwölf weniger eins? Sechzehn geteilt durch vier?

## D

1. There is his table, but I see nothing on it. 2. She saw them yesterday, but they did not give her the book. 3. We did not think of it. I did not think of him. 4. Is it you, children? Yes, it is we. 5. I, who am very poor, gave him ten marks. 6. Here is a watch for you, Henry, do not lose it. 7. It is my books that they (man) have found. 8. There were only two boys there. 9. He showed it to you, children, did he not? 10. We have nothing against it. 11. It is only half past twelve; a quarter past two; a quarter of seven; twenty minutes past one; ten minutes of nine. 12. Three from forty is thirty-seven. Twenty-four divided by four is six. Five times forty is two hundred. Thirty-two and forty is seventy-two. 13. We shall be back again at six o'clock. 14. What are you going to (wollen) do with it? 15. Where is my pencil? Have you it, Henry?

## E

1. You (Man) can never believe what he says. 2. Is it you, Mr. Smith? 3. It was his own brothers who betrayed him. 4. There is no stove in my room. 5. There comes my father. 6. How can I, who am his father, believe (= believe it) otherwise? 7. Where is the paper? Is there (Steht) any news in it to-day? 8. Get me my hat, Clara. It is lying on a chair in the bedroom. 9. I shall meet you at half past two at the post office. 10. You will get used to it. 11. It will be you who in the end will have to (muss.) pay for it. 12. Before I became acquainted with him, he lived in Vienna. 13. It is only half past nine; he will not go before eleven o'clock. 14. There is no light in the house; everything is dark. 15. Get the lamp out of the dining room and put it on the

table (*acc.*) in the study. 16. How can you, who have suffered so much through him, still have confidence in him? 17. He has been working at (*an*) it for five years. 18. It is not the first time that he did such a thing (*so etwas*). 19. What has he done that they (*man*) treat him so contemptuously? 20. He is not a lawyer, but a physician.

## LESSON IX

### DECLENSION OF ADJECTIVES

#### Lernen Sie auswendig:

1. Das ist rein unmöglich. *That is absolutely impossible.*
2. Er ist ein alter Freund von mir. *He is an old friend of mine.*
3. Glückliche Reise! *A pleasant journey!*
4. Er ist immer guter Dinge. *He is always in good spirits.*
5. Was gibt's Neues? *What's the news?*

#### A

The present lesson refers to descriptive adjectives only.

The descriptive adjective is declined only in the attributive position. Cf. B 1, 2. In this position it may have two sets of endings, called strong and weak endings. Familiarize yourself with these endings so that you can give them without hesitation.

The main point in the lesson is, When are the strong endings used, and when the weak? The rule may be briefly stated as follows: The descriptive adjective takes the strong endings, unless it is preceded by an **inflected** form of a *diefer*-word or a *fein*-word (cf. Lesson I), in which case the descriptive adjective has the weak endings. Cf. B 2, 3.

An exception to this rule is found in the genitive singular, where the weak ending *en* is commonly used before a noun

in [c]ß, although the descriptive adjective is not preceded by a *dießer*-word or a *fein*-word. Cf. B 4.

After the indefinite numerals *einige*, *mehrere*, *vieler*, and *wenige* the descriptive adjective generally has, in the nominative and accusative plural, the strong endings; in the other cases, the weak endings. Cf. B 5, 6. But after *alle* the weak endings are used in all cases. Cf. B 9.

Note adjectives ending in *el*, *en*, and *er*. Cf. B 7.

Observe that descriptive adjectives do not affect each other. Cf. B 8.

The word *one* after descriptive adjectives is not expressed in German. Cf. B 10, D 13.

## B

1. Der Mann ist klein. Die Frau ist klein. Das Kind ist klein. Die Leute sind klein. 2. Ein kleiner Mann. Diese kleine Frau. Dieses kleine Kind. Kleine Leute. 3. Zwei große Hunde. Die großen Hunde. Unser großer Hund. Jeder große Hund. 4. Er eilte raschen Schrittes an dem Hause vorbei. 5. Hier sind einige neue Bücher, Hans. 6. Gestern haben mich mehrere alte Freunde besucht. 7. Das Zimmer war sehr dunkel. Es war ein dunkles Zimmer. 8. Er hat zwei schöne große Häuser gebaut. 9. Nicht alle reichen Leute sind glücklich. 10. Welches Kind meinen Sie, das große oder das kleine?

## C

1. Guten Morgen! Was weißt du Neues?
2. Steht heute [et]was Neues in der Zeitung?
3. Was hast du Schönes in Berlin gesehen?
4. Weißt du mir nichts Interessantes zu erzählen?
5. Weißt du viel Gutes von ihm?

6. Hast du ein deutsches Wörterbuch?
7. Ist er ein Deutscher?
8. Ist sie eine Deutsche?
9. Hier ist die alte Füllfeder. Wo ist die neue?
10. Was für ein Zimmer habt ihr, ein großes oder ein kleines?

## D

1. The boy is tall. A tall boy. The tall boy. 2. The knife is sharp. This sharp knife. His sharp knife. 3. My little dog. Every little dog. Our little dog. Her little dog. 4. He is a rich old fellow, but very stingy. 5. In Germany one sees many beautiful old castles. 6. He gave me a glass of cold water. 7. Here is a bottle of good wine. 8. The building is high. It is a high building. 9. Her hair is dark. She has dark hair. 10. Have you heard anything new? 11. I met (treffen) several old friends there. 12. He is a stranger. The stranger is a German. 13. Which of these pencils do you want, the red one or the black one? 14. All little children should go to bed early. 15. We are old acquaintances.

## E

1. My new pen does not write so well as the old one. 2. He is a good little boy. 3. Whenever I sleep by an (*omit*) open window I catch cold. 4. There were very few old people there. 5. With (*omit*) bowed head (*gen. of Haupt, neut.*) he stood before her. 6. That is nothing unusual. 7. He told me all sorts of interesting things (*omit*). 8. Although he is only thirty, he is already very gray. 9. Which horse did he buy, the white one or the black one? 10. Eat your soup, Fred, before it gets cold. 11. Can you recommend to me a good German dictionary? There are (gift) several good

ones. 12. I believe it was he who told me about it. 13. Last week I visited my old schoolmate, Oscar Schuster, who is now living in the country. 14. There is Fred's new hat on the floor. He has probably forgotten where he left it. 15. Who is that tall gentleman over there? I do not know his name, but he is a druggist on Kaiser street. 16. When I was in the city yesterday I bought two interesting French novels for you. 17. I probably already know all that he can tell me. 18. There goes old Mr. Fisher. To-morrow he will be ninety years old. 19. Those (Das) are very expensive books he sent you. 20. With (*omit*) moist eyes (*gen. sing.*) he read the letter from his son in distant Africa.

## LESSON X

### COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES AND ADVERBS

#### Lernen Sie auswendig:

1. Je eher, je lieber. *The sooner the better.*
2. Das Ärgste kommt noch. *The worst is yet to come.*
3. Ich werde mein Möglichstes tun. *I shall do my best.*
4. Das wäre ja am besten. *That would be best.*
5. Das wird immer schlimmer. *It is getting worse and worse.*

#### A

Review the comparison of adjectives and adverbs. Does German differ from English in the method of forming the comparative and superlative degrees?

Note that the comparative and superlative forms of the adjective are declined strong or weak under the same circumstances as the positive form. Cf. B 1.

Note carefully the phrases with *am*. Cf. B 2, 3. They represent (1) the superlative of the **predicate** adjective, (2) the superlative of adverbs. The *am*-phrases cannot be used in the attributive position.

Note how German expresses the absolute superlative, that is, one which does not imply a comparison with other objects, but only denotes a very high degree. Cf. B 4.

The comparative preceded by *immer* is translated in English by a double comparative. Cf. B 5, D 3.

How is *than* after the comparative translated? Cf. B 6.

## B

1. Mein jüngerer Sohn. Der kleinere Knabe. Unser ältestes Kind. Das dunkelste Zimmer. 2. Im Winter sind die Tage am kürzesten. 3. Wer hat am schönsten gesungen? Marie hat am schönsten gesungen. 4. Das ist aufs strengste verboten. Er war äußerst überrascht. Das ist höchst interessant. 5. Es wurde immer dunkler. 6. Hans ist größer als sein Vater, aber nicht so groß wie sein Onkel.

## C

1. Wie heißt dein älterer Sohn?
2. Bist du älter als dein Bruder?
3. Welches sind die vier größten Städte Deutschlands?
4. Wann ist das Gras am grünsten?
5. Wer hat am schnellsten geschrieben?
6. Er hat äußerst interessant gesprochen, finden Sie nicht?
7. Kannst du nicht schneller laufen?
8. Ist er nicht so alt wie du?
9. Wer ist der reichste Mann in der Stadt?
10. Wer ist der größte deutsche Dichter?

## D

1. My bedroom is larger than my study. 2. Her new dress is not so pretty as her old one. 3. It is becoming hotter and hotter. 4. A more industrious pupil than Charles is hard to find. 5. His youngest child has the measles. 6. Study most (*richt*) industriously, children. 7. I work best when I am alone. 8. The days are longest in the summer. 9. Rich people are not always the happiest. 10. The (*je*) longer she talked, the (*desto*) more excited she became. 11. She is the most charming woman I have ever met. 12. The smaller of the two boys fell and broke his (*richt*) den) arm. 13. He became more and more angry the more he thought about (*an*) it. 14. The new pens are not only better but also much cheaper than the old ones. 15. It is prettiest here in June.

## E

1. The more I see of him, the better I like him (= he pleases me). 2. He is not so stupid as he looks. 3. It is becoming more and more difficult to secure reliable servants. 4. She is prettier than her sister. 5. That was the hardest thing (*omit*) I had to do. 6. He is the best fellow in (*von*) the world. 7. There never lived (*perf.*) a better man than he. 8. Most likely he will not want to do it. 9. He was received (*aufnehmen*) in a most friendly manner. 10. It is high (= the highest) time that you attend to it. 11. Who threw the ball the farthest? 12. The weather is most pleasant in autumn. 13. Which of (*von*) the boys is the oldest? Charles is the oldest, but he is smaller than William. 14. Is that the best you can do? 15. Give me the smallest ones you have. I cannot use the large ones. 16. He has the

reddest hair I ever saw. 17. Come as soon as possible, for we still have much to do. 18. These boards are longer than those we had yesterday, but I must have still longer ones. 19. You must get up earlier. Then I shall have to go to bed earlier. 20. Do you know the latest (= the newest)? Fred Brown has just returned from Germany.

## LESSON XI

### POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS. ORDINAL AND FRACTIONAL NUMBERS

#### Lernen Sie auswendig:

1. Dein Kleid ist schöner als mein[e]s (*or* das meine, *or* das meinige). *Your dress is prettier than mine.*
2. Eins von beiden genügt. *Either will do.*
3. Der vierte Juli. *The fourth of July.*  
Am vierten Juli. *On the fourth of July.*
4. Zwei Fünftel von zehn ist vier. *Two fifths of ten is four.*

#### A

The words used as possessive adjectives (cf. Lesson I) may also be used as possessive pronouns, that is, they may stand alone, without a noun. When used as pronouns, they take strong endings everywhere. When used as adjectives, they are, as we saw in Lesson I, defective, having no endings in the nominative singular masculine and in the nominative and accusative singular neuter.

Instead of having strong endings the possessive pronouns may be preceded by the definite article and take weak endings, or they may form derivatives ending in **ig**, which are preceded

by the definite article and are declined weak. The three forms are used without any difference in meaning.<sup>1</sup> Cf. B 1, 2.

The words *ein* and *sein*, which, as adjectives, are defective (cf. Lesson I), take the strong endings everywhere when used pronominally. Cf. B 3.

The *dießer*-words (cf. Lesson I) may also be used as pronouns. Note that their English equivalents are followed in the singular by the word *one*. Cf. B 4, D 1.

How are ordinal numbers formed? They are declined strong and weak like the descriptive adjective. Cf. B 5, 6.

How are fractional numbers formed? Cf. B 7.

## B

1. Das ist nicht mein Bleistift, meiner (*or* der meine, *or* der meinige) liegt auf dem Tische. 2. Karl hat mein Buch und ich habe sein|es (*or* das seine, *or* das seinige). 3. Einer der Knaben hat es gefunden. 4. Dieses Haus gehört Herrn Schmidt, jenes gehört Herrn Braun. 5. Sein zweiter Sohn heißt Karl. 6. Heute ist der dritte März. 7. Ein Sechstel von zwölf ist zwei.

## C

1. Wem gehört das dritte Haus von der Ecke?
2. Wieviel ist ein Zehntel von dreißig?
3. Der wievielte ist heute?
4. Hast du Heinrichs Messer oder mein|es (das meine, das meinige)?
5. Meine Eltern sind jetzt in der Schweiz. Wo sind Ihre (die Ihren, die Ihrigen)?

<sup>1</sup> The forms *der meine*, *die meine*, etc., belong, on the whole, more to choice diction. In the predicate an uninflected form may be used to express simple ownership, as *das Buch ist mein*. But *ihr* and *Ihr* may not be used thus.

6. Ist das nicht ein[e]s Ihrer Pferde?
7. Wann sind Sie geboren?
8. Wann habt ihr ihn zum letztenmal gesehen?
9. Wieviel ist drei Fünfundzwanzigstel von zweihundert?
10. Ist das nicht schon der siebte Apfel, den du gegessen hast?

## D

1. This book and that one on the table; that pencil and this one. 2. Here is his book, where is mine? 3. One of the men is very old. 4. He is a second Schiller. 5. A third of these apples are spoilt. 6. Yesterday was the twenty-second of February. 7. One of the most interesting books that I have ever read is Scheffel's "Ekkehard." 8. My knife is sharper than his. 9. Last year it snowed on the twenty-fourth of April. 10. None of the children would do it. 11. Her father is rich, mine is poor. 12. I never sell my old schoolbooks. What do you do with yours? 13. Their house is not so large as ours. 14. The first thing (*omit*) that I did was to write a letter to my parents. 15. Please give me one of those pictures. Which one do you want? That one on the piano.

## E

1. Is that your book? No, it is not mine. Ask Mary if it belongs to her, for she has lost hers. 2. Two ninths of twenty is four and four-ninths. 3. My birthday is on the sixteenth of August. When is yours? 4. I had to throw away half (= the half) of the potatoes because they were so small. 5. Do you know whose pencil this is? It is mine. 6. How do you know that he will come? One of his sons told me so (eß). 7. You have three fountain pens, sell me this one. I will give you that one on the table. 8. If your razor is not sharp, try mine. 9. I sold my house for ten

thousand marks. How much did you get for yours? 10. He will arrive on the first of June and stay until July 10th. 11. That is a beautiful watch you have. How much did you pay for it? It is much prettier than mine. 12. Can you lend us your German dictionary? We cannot find ours. 13. I have already forgotten everything he said. 14. Whoever told you that does not know what he is talking about (von). 15. Our dresses are just as good as theirs. 16. As soon as he breaks his bicycle, he will borrow yours. 17. Apples are cheapest in summer and autumn. 18. My piano did not cost so much as hers, but it is good enough for me. 19. Yesterday we worked ten hours and to-day we have been working since half past six. 20. The books I ordered have arrived, so (und da) I shall not need yours any longer.

## LESSON XII

### INSEPARABLE COMPOUND VERBS. PREPOSITIONS

#### Lernen Sie auswendig:

1. Ich bedauere es sehr. *I regret it very much.*
2. Entschuldigen Sie! *Pardon me.*
3. Was habe ich verbrochen? *What wrong have I done?*
4. Ich wohne auf dem Lande. *I live in the country.*
5. Er ist sehr stolz auf seinen Sohn. *He is very proud of his son.*

#### A

Memorize the inseparable prefixes. Inseparable compound verbs omit *ge* in the past participle, but otherwise their conjugation does not differ from that of simple verbs.

Note that the inseparable prefixes are never accented, whether they occur in compound verbs, nouns, adjectives, or any other part of speech.

At this period in the study of German some attention should be devoted to the most obvious and common meanings of the inseparable prefixes. Cf. B 1-5.

Which prepositions govern the genitive (cf. B 6)? the dative (cf. B 7)? the accusative (cf. B 8)? either the dative or the accusative (cf. B 9, 10)? In the latter case it is important to distinguish when the dative is used, and when the accusative. The dative is used when locality or position merely is indicated, while the accusative is used when motion, either literal or figurative, towards the object of the preposition is expressed.

## B

1. Ich habe seinen Brief noch nicht beantwortet. 2. Kolumbus hat Amerika entdeckt. 3. Der kleine Junge erbettelte zwei Taler. 4. Er hat all sein Geld verspielt. 5. Du wirst dein Kleid zerreißen. 6. Meines Vaters wegen will ich es tun. 7. Er ging nach Berlin zu seinem Onkel. 8. Ohne dich gehe ich nicht durch den Wald. 9. Er stand am Fenster. Er ging ans Fenster. 10. Er sprang hinter den Tisch. Er sprang hinter dem Tische auf und nieder.

## C

1. Wo wurde er begraben?
2. Welcher König von Frankreich wurde enthauptet?
3. Wer hat das Telephon erfunden?
4. Hat er sich nicht versprochen?
5. Wer hat die Fensterscheibe zerbrochen?
6. Wohnt er diesseits oder jenseits des Flusses?
7. Bei wem wohnst du?
8. Was hast du gegen mich?
9. Was haben Sie auf den Tisch gelegt?
10. Was liegt auf dem Tische?

## D

1. I have made a mistake in writing. 2. He has drunk up all his money. 3. Children, obey your parents. 4. This book belongs to my brother. 5. She has broken the flower-pot to pieces. 6. He shot the bird all (*ganß*) to pieces. 7. He has won a thousand marks at cards. 8. His father has disinherited him. 9. As soon as he entered (*betreten*) the room, everything became as quiet as a mouse. 10. He was sitting beside his father. He sat down beside his mother. 11. The chair was standing in front of the table. They placed the chair in front of the table. 12. During the war he lived in Berlin. 13. Besides the dress you gave me I still have two others. 14. Who can jump over the fence? 15. Your pencil is lying under the table in the study.

## E

1. I shall attend to that to-morrow while I am down town. 2. That will lighten my work very much (*omit*). 3. He has outgrown his clothes. 4. He ran into the house and got his gun. 5. I have mislaid my thimble. 6. You know that I despise him. 7. She was standing at the window when he passed by. 8. His face grew pale when he heard the sad news. 9. The cat jumped on the child and scratched its face (*ihm das Gesicht*) frightfully. 10. He threw his ball under the house and could not find it again. 11. He refreshed himself with a drink of cold water. 12. She could not rid herself of his presence. 13. He took his money out of his pocket and laid it on the bed. 14. The house is old and dilapidated. 15. For your mother's sake I shall do it. 16. He has already used up his entire fortune. 17. He sat down between me and my brother. 18. He could not make

friends with his neighbor. 19. Although I do not like (*nicht leiden mögen*) him, I have nothing in particular against him. 20. Since that day I have seen him only once.

## LESSON XIII

## SEPARABLE COMPOUND VERBS. DOUBTFUL PREFIXES

## Lernen Sie auswendig:

1. Es kommt ganz und gar auf dich an. *It depends entirely on you.*
2. Was hast du heute vor? *What are you going to do to-day?*
3. Es hat aufgehört zu regnen. *It has stopped raining.*
4. Komm mal her! *Come here.*
5. Bitte, greifen Sie zu! *Please help yourself.*

## A

The main thing to bear in mind in the use of the separable compound verbs is the position of the prefix. In the present and past tenses in both normal and inverted order the prefix is separated from the rest of the verb and stands alone at the end of the clause (cf. B 1, 2); but it is not separated from the verb in the transposed order (cf. B 3). In the future tense the prefix is written with the infinitive (cf. B 4); in the perfect tenses, with the participle (cf. B 5, 6).

Note the position of *zu* with the dependent infinitive of a separable compound verb. Cf. B 7.

Separable prefixes receive the accent.

Memorize the doubtful prefixes, that is, those that are sometimes separable and sometimes inseparable. Cf. B 8, 9. These prefixes are apt to be separable when used in their literal sense, and inseparable when used in a figurative sense. In some cases, however, this distinction will not hold true.

## B

1. Ich mache die Thür **auf**. 2. Sogleich machte ich die Thür **auf**. 3. Wenn ich die Thür **aufmache**, so wirst du dich erkälten. 4. Ich werde die Thür **aufmachen**. 5. Ich habe die Thür **aufgemacht**. 6. Wenn ich die Thür **aufgemacht** hätte, so hättest du dich erkältet. 7. Er versuchte vergebens die Thür **aufzumachen**. 8. Er **unternahm** nichts, was er nicht vollenden konnte. 9. Zwei kleine Schiffe gingen **unter**.

## C

1. Wann bist du heute morgen aufgewacht?
2. Wann stehst du des Morgens auf?
3. Wann hast du das Buch angefangen?
4. Hast du Zeit mitzugehen?
5. Hat es noch nicht aufgehört zu regnen?
6. Kam er herunter oder ging er hinauf?
7. Wann geht die Sonne jetzt unter?
8. Wer hat mich unterbrochen?
9. Warum haben Sie das Buch wiedergeholt?
10. Habe ich meine Frage nicht zweimal wiederholt?

## D

1. He took off his coat. He took off his hat. 2. He put on his coat. He put on his hat. 3. He overturned a chair. 4. To-morrow the sun rises at half past five. 5. He has brought his father along. 6. This morning I forgot to wind up the clock and it has run down. 7. We did not remain long because the fire had gone out. 8. When it begins to rain, close all the windows. 9. His watch is fast and mine is slow. 10. We came to (an) a broad river and an old man ferried us across. 11. He translated the poem very well.

12. Yesterday the sun set at half past six. 13. Do not interrupt me when I am talking. 14. Fred, come here and put on this coat. 15. You are looking well. Yes, I have gained ten pounds (*sing.*).

## E

1. I took off my hat and put on my glasses. 2. Although I had locked all the doors and windows, still I could not go to sleep. 3. To-day I shall put on my new dress. 4. He opened the door and closed the window. 5. This morning I arose at six o'clock. 6. We never saw him again. 7. I repeated the question three times before he understood me. 8. He overturned a vase and broke it. 9. He embraced his mother and kissed her on the forehead (*acc.*). 10. He failed (*perf.*) in mathematics (= in the mathematics). 11. I saw through him at once. 12. Stop staring (*infin.*) at her so. 13. As soon as it began to rain we went home. 14. He kept on talking (*infin.*) although nobody listened to him. 15. He wrote down everything that I said. 16. Who proposed that to you? 17. Suddenly it occurred to me that I had forgotten my watch. 18. Do not spend all your money. 19. When you come back, call for me at Uncle Frank's. 20. What do you prefer, coffee, tea, or milk?

## LESSON XIV

IMPERSONAL AND REFLEXIVE VERBS. INTENSIVE AND  
RECIPROCAL PRONOUNS

## Lernen Sie auswendig:

1. Es tut mir leid. *I am sorry.*
2. Es freut mich, Sie kennen zu lernen. *I am glad to meet you.*
3. Schäme dich! *Shame on you.*
4. Du wirst dich erkälten. *You will catch cold.*
5. Beeilen Sie sich! *Hurry.*
6. Sie irren sich. *You are mistaken.*
7. Er hat es mir selbst gesagt. *He told me so himself.*

## A

Review the conjugation and use of impersonal verbs. Cf. B 1. Note carefully those verbs that are impersonal in German, but not impersonal in English. Cf. B 2.

Review the conjugation and use of reflexive verbs. What are the reflexive pronouns? Give as many verbs as you can that are reflexive in German. Cf. B 3, 4.

Distinguish between the reflexive pronouns and the intensive pronouns selbst, selber. In English the reflexive pronoun coincides in form with the intensive pronoun, but this is not the case in German. Cf. B 5, 6, D 10. Selbst and selber are used alike, except that selbst may also be used adverbially in the meaning of *even*; it then precedes the word that it intensifies. Cf. B 7.

German has a special reciprocal pronoun, einander, but more commonly uses the reflexive pronoun to express the reciprocal relation when no ambiguity can arise. Cf. B 8, 9.

After a preposition, however, *einander* is generally used, being united with the preposition in one word. Cf. B 10.

## B

1. Es schneit; es schneite; gestern hat es geschneit. 2. Es tut mir leid. Es hungert mich. 3. Ich freue mich sehr darüber. Gott, erbarme dich unser! 4. Wir haben uns erkältet. Niemand erinnerte sich seiner. 5. Er hat das Kind selbst (selber) gewaschen. 6. Er hat sich gewaschen. 7. Selbst sein Vater hat ihn nicht erkannt. 8. Sie sehen einander jeden Tag. 9. Sie sehen sich jeden Tag. 10. Sie haben lange miteinander gesprochen.

## C

1. Guten Morgen! Wie geht es Ihnen heute?
2. Wie gefällt es Ihnen in Berlin?
3. Was gibt es Neues?
4. Ist es dir gestern gelungen, deinen Freund zu finden?
5. Hat es nicht gestern nacht stark geregnet?
6. Schämt er sich seines Vatters?
7. Fürchten sie sich vor dem Hunde?
8. Wieviel Geld haben Sie bei sich?
9. Hat er es nicht selbst gemacht?
10. Hassen Sie sich (einander)?

## D

1. It is lightening; it is storming; yesterday it rained hard (stark). 2. I am cold (Es ist mir kalt); I am hot. 3. He is sorry. 4. Finally we succeeded in opening the door. 5. She was glad to see us. 6. He undressed quickly and went to bed. 7. Put on your overcoat, Charles, else you will catch cold. 8. My sister is afraid of mice. 9. She had no

money with her. 10. He himself saw it. He saw himself in the mirror. 11. Even the President can do nothing for him. 12. He was lying on a bench. He lay down on a bench. 13. Wake up, Herman, get up and dress. 14. We see each other every day. 15. They write to each other three times a (= the) week.

## E

1. Even the dog would not eat it. 2. He does not know himself what he wants. 3. You can rely on him; I have known him for many years. 4. They hardly greet each other. 5. They will not have anything to do with each other. 6. Hurry, children, else you will be late. 7. She was sitting between her father and her sister. She sat down between her father and her sister. 8. You must attend to that yourself. 9. Be careful, do not cut yourself, that knife is very sharp. 10. It hailed an hour this morning. 11. We are sorry for him. 12. There are all sorts of people in the world. 13. I do not feel quite well. I have caught cold. 14. My mother was only sixteen years old when she married. 15. How do you like it in the country? Very well, but in winter I prefer to live in town (= in the town). 16. We became acquainted with each other on the train when I was going (reizen) to New York. 17. I shall be glad if you succeed in doing that. 18. I remember her very well, although I have not seen her for (seit) thirty years. 19. Our old friend Meyer was here to-day and inquired about you. 20. We have changed our mind. We have decided to do it after all.

## LESSON XV

PRESENT, PAST, AND FUTURE TENSES OF THE  
MODAL AUXILIARIES

Lernen Sie auswendig:

1. Darf ich mitgehen? *May I go along?*
2. Ich konnte gestern nicht kommen. *I could not come yesterday.*
3. Ich könnte morgen kommen. *I could come to-morrow.*
4. Ich möchte ihn gern sehen. *I should like to see him.*
5. Ich mußte lachen. *I had to laugh.*
6. Ich sollte es eigentlich nicht tun. *I really ought not to do it.*
7. Er wird es nicht tun wollen. *He will not want to do it.*

## A

Review the conjugation of the modal auxiliaries. In German they have a full conjugation, whereas the inflection of their English cognates is almost entirely lost. The missing forms in English must be supplied by many circumlocutions. Cf. B 1.

Fix in mind the usual meanings of each modal auxiliary.

Three very common subjunctive forms are used in this lesson, namely, *könnte, could, should be able to*; *möchte, should like to*; *sollte, ought to*. Cf. B 3, 4, 10.

Note that an infinitive dependent upon a modal auxiliary is not preceded by *zu*. Cf. B 1-3. This is the case also with an infinitive dependent upon certain other verbs, as *lassen, sehen, etc.*; cf. Lesson XVI.

After the modal auxiliaries a dependent infinitive is often omitted when it can be easily supplied from the context. Cf. B 12.

## B

1. Er muß gehen. Er mußte gehen. Er wird gehen müssen.
2. Darf ich das haben? Das dürfen Sie nicht sagen. Er wird es nicht tun dürfen.
3. Er konnte es nicht tun. Ich könnte es morgen tun. Das werden Sie nie tun können.
4. Das mag sein. Ich mag ihn nicht. Ich möchte gern mit ihm darüber sprechen.
5. Was willst du? Das will er durchaus nicht tun. Er wollte es nicht tun.
6. Er will morgen kommen. Er wird morgen kommen.
7. Ich wollte eben zu Bett gehen, als Karl ins Zimmer trat.
8. Das will er schon lange gewußt haben.
9. Du sollst nicht töten. Ich werde es morgen anfangen. Ich soll es morgen anfangen.
10. Was sollen wir jetzt anfangen? Das sollte er gleich anfangen.
11. Er soll über hundert Jahre alt sein.
12. Ich muß gleich fort. Willst du mit?

## C

1. Darf ich rauchen, Fräulein?
2. Können Sie mich verstehen?
3. Möchtest du gern auf dem Lande wohnen?
4. Müssen Sie das wirklich tun?
5. Was willst du werden?
6. Wann will er ihn gesehen haben?
7. Wann soll ich mit ihm darüber sprechen?
8. Was sollte ich tun, mitgehen oder zu Hause bleiben?
9. Wann soll er es getan haben?
10. Willst du heute abend mit ins Theater?

## D

1. I could not go yesterday. I could go to-morrow.
2. I shall not be able to go.
3. May I speak with you a moment,

Mr. Smith? 4. You must not do that, Jack. 5. That may be true. 6. I should like to spend next summer in Germany. 7. When must you go (*omit*) home, Henry? 8. I did not want to do it, but I had to. 9. You will have to do that to-morrow. 10. You ought to speak with him about it. 11. Fred is to help me at it (*dabei*). 12. She is said to be very beautiful. 13. I am sorry that you cannot go along. 14. He ought to be ashamed of it (*darüber*). 15. He claims to have been rich once.

## E

1. If that is the case, you will have to wait until I can help you. 2. What am I to do (*omit*) with that? 3. I should like to know who told him that. I will ask Jack if he knows (= knows it). 4. He will not do it, you can rely upon that. 5. I have mislaid my knife. May I borrow yours a moment? 6. He could be very helpful to me if he only wanted to. 7. I know I ought not to eat so fast, but I cannot help it. 8. They were just about to go home when it began to rain. 9. That may be the case, but I shall not believe it until he tells me so (*es*) himself. 10. We had to do it whether we wanted to (= wanted it) or not. 11. You must not smoke here. It is dangerous. 12. He could not accompany her because he had too much to do. 13. She is said to be a famous singer. 14. He claims to be related to the emperor. 15. We shall not be able to attend to it for you. 16. Will he be permitted to keep them? 17. He intends to buy himself a bicycle as soon as he earns enough money. 18. I do not like her, for she is too conceited. 19. You must tell me all you know about it. 20. Should you like to go (*omit*) along to the theater this evening?

## LESSON XVI

## PERFECT TENSES OF THE MODAL AUXILIARIES

## Lernen Sie auswendig:

1. Ich habe es tun müssen. *I have had to do it.*
2. Ich habe es nicht tun dürfen. *I have not been permitted to do it.*
3. Ich habe es nicht tun können. *I have not been able to do it.*
4. Ich hätte es tun können. *I could have done it.*
5. Ich hätte es tun sollen. *I ought to have done it.*

## A

Note that the past participle of a modal auxiliary, when accompanied by the infinitive of another verb, assumes the old form of the participle, which is without *ge* and looks like the present infinitive. Cf. B 1, 2.

A few other verbs, besides the modal auxiliaries, show this peculiarity. The most common of these are heißen, helfen, hören, lassen, and sehen. Cf. B 3, 4.

In a subordinate clause having an infinitive followed by the old form of the past participle the tense auxiliary comes before the infinitive instead of at the end of the clause. Cf. B 5, 6.

Two very common subjunctive forms are used in this lesson, namely, hätte . . . können, *could have*, and hätte . . . sollen, *ought to have*. Cf. B 6-8.

## B

1. Er hat es nicht gewollt, aber er hat es gemußt.
2. Er hat es nicht tun wollen, aber er hat es tun müssen.
3. Ich habe dich

gehört. Ich habe dich singen hören. 4. Du hast dein Buch im Esszimmer gelassen. Du hast dein Buch auf dem Boden liegen lassen. 5. Ich sage, daß er gestern nicht hat kommen können. 6. Wenn ich ihn nur hätte sehen können! 7. Er konnte gestern nicht kommen. Er könnte morgen kommen. Er hätte gestern kommen können. 8. Du solltest mir helfen. Du hättest mir helfen sollen. 9. Wir haben nicht gehen dürfen. 10. Er mag es getan haben. Er hat es nicht tun mögen.

### C

1. Wie lange habt ihr gestern arbeiten müssen?
2. Haben Sie mit ihm sprechen dürfen?
3. Warum hat er nicht kommen können?
4. Warum hätte er nicht kommen können?
5. Hast du das nicht sogleich tun sollen?
6. Hättest du das nicht schon lange tun sollen?
7. Haben Sie es nicht tun mögen?
8. Haben Sie es nicht tun wollen?
9. Hat er mich kommen sehen?
10. Hast du sie singen hören?

### D

1. Jack is to help me to-day. He was to (*perf.*) help me yesterday, but he had a headache.
2. You ought to see my new dress.
3. You ought to have seen how glad he was.
4. I could not work yesterday, because it rained all day.
5. You could do it if you only wanted to.
6. I could have done it in two hours.
7. I never did like (*perf.*) him anyway (*auch*).
8. He had never been permitted to play in (*auf*) the street.
9. He has never been willing to do it.
10. We have had to sell our house.
11. I know that he ought not to

have done it. 12. We have never heard you play. 13. You ought to be ashamed to say such a thing (*jō etwas*). 14. This morning I got up at five o'clock because I could not sleep. 15. She could not come earlier, because she has been helping her mother clean up.

## E

1. I had never been able to find (*treffen*) him at home. 2. He was to (*perf.*) leave for Boston this morning, but he missed the train. 3. I have never cared to travel. 4. Where did you have (*perf. of lassen*) that suit made? 5. I have often had to remind him of it. 6. Has anybody been permitted to visit him since he has been sick? 7. He had not wanted to go. 8. I have never been able to comprehend why she married him. 9. I have never wanted to dance. 10. I ought to have let him do it. 11. Have you heard him come in? 12. I have never cared for dogs. 13. It is too bad that you have not been able to see her. 14. I was not allowed to do such a thing (*jō etwas*). 15. He did not want to wear his overcoat. 16. He could have waited for me, could he not? 17. He ought to have been thankful, but he was not (*= was it not*). 18. I should like to see him when he gets this letter. 19. He was in a (*omit*) very bad humor because he had been forced to wait six hours for a train. 20. May I ask what is the matter with him?

## LESSON XVII

CONJUGATION OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE AND CONDITIONAL  
MOODS. CONDITIONAL SENTENCES

## Lernen Sie auswendig:

1. Wenn ich an deiner Stelle wäre, so würde ich das nicht tun.  
*If I were in your place, I should not do that.*
2. Wenn ich an deiner Stelle gewesen wäre, so hätte ich das nicht getan. *If I had been in your place, I should not have done that.*
3. Es wäre aber schön, wenn du mitgehen könntest. *It would certainly be lovely if you could go with us.*

## A

Review the conjugation of the subjunctive and conditional moods.

Study carefully the structure of conditional sentences. Note: (1) Either the condition (protasis) or the conclusion (apodosis) may stand first, just as in English. If the condition precedes, inverted order is used in the conclusion, which then is usually introduced by *so*. (2) *Wenn* may be used or omitted. If *wenn* is omitted, inverted order is used in the condition. Cf. B 1-4.

Bear in mind that the subjunctive is not used in all conditional sentences, but only in certain kinds: (1) in unreal conditions (conditions contrary to fact), as in B 1-4; (2) in less vivid future conditions, as in B 5, 6. In other conditional sentences the indicative is used. Cf. B 8-10.

The tenses of the subjunctive are used as follows: (1) in less vivid future conditions, only the past; (2) in unreal conditions, either the past if referring to present time, or the pluperfect if referring to past time.

In the conclusion the subjunctive may be replaced by the conditional mood. The latter is preferred in cases where the subjunctive form does not differ from the indicative, as, for instance, in the past tense of weak verbs.

## B

1. Wenn ich reich wäre, so würde ich das Haus kaufen.
2. Hätte er das gewußt, so würde er nicht gegangen sein (*or* so wäre er nicht gegangen).
3. Ich würde es tun (*or* Ich täte es), hätte ich mehr Zeit.
4. Wir würden früher gekommen sein (*or* Wir wären früher gekommen), wenn wir das gewußt hätten.
5. Wenn er morgen käme, so wäre es noch Zeit (*or* so würde es noch Zeit sein).
6. Es wäre besser (*or* Es würde besser sein), wenn du das gleich tätest.
7. Wenn er es auch wüßte, so würde er es mir nicht sagen.
8. Wenn er da war, so habe ich ihn nicht gesehen.
9. Wenn sie Zeit hat, so wird sie kommen.
10. Regnet es morgen, so bleibt er zu Hause.

## C

*Change the following unreal conditions from present to past time:*

1. Wenn es nicht so kalt wäre, so würde ich einen Spaziergang machen.
2. Wäre er nicht so dumm, so könnte er dir helfen.
3. Das Zimmer wäre heller, wenn die Fenster nicht so klein wären.
4. Wir würden gleich kommen, hätten wir nicht so viel zu tun.

*Change the following unreal conditions from past to present time:*

1. Wenn er hier gewesen wäre, so würde er es getan haben.
2. Hätte es nicht so stark geregnet, so wäre ich gegangen.
3. Er hätte es getan, wenn er nicht krank gewesen wäre.
4. Wir würden glücklich gewesen sein, hätten wir ein solches Haus gehabt.

## D

1. If you were in my place, what should you tell him?
2. Should you have told (= told it) him, if he had asked you about it (*darüber*)?
3. When my little boy is grown, he wants to become a lawyer.
4. If I had only known that, I could have saved you a lot of trouble.
5. What should you do if you had a million dollars?
6. If he was mad, he did not show (*perf.*) it.
7. It would have been better if you had said nothing at all.
8. If you do not dress warmer, you will catch cold.
9. If I am not too tired this evening, I will go with you to the theater.
10. I should be very glad if he came to-morrow.
11. He could have done it if he had only wanted to.
12. How would it be if we said nothing about it (*davon*)?
13. I should never have believed it if I had not seen it myself.
14. If you do not know where I can find him, who does (= who will know it)?
15. I should stay longer if it were not so late.

## E

1. If he told (= has told it) me, I have forgotten it.
2. If I had not helped him, he never would have finished.
3. If you were not so lazy, you would learn better.
4. Would it not be nice if we had no school to-morrow?
5. If you do not believe (= believe it) me, ask her yourself.
6. If you would only hurry, we could still catch (*erreichen*) the train.
7. If you had not been in such a big (= in so big) hurry, we could have called on Aunt Mary.
8. It would be too bad if he could not come.
9. If they already knew it, why did they look so astonished?
10. If you hear of anybody that wants to buy a cow, please let me know (= know it).
11. If I had let him help, he would have spoiled everything.
12. If Jack

ran the fastest, who ran the slowest? 13. If your wheel is broken, you may use mine to-day. 14. If you had not reminded me of it, I should have forgotten it. 15. It would look better if we did not go to the concert this evening. 16. His speech would have made a greater impression upon us if we did not know him so well. 17. If you do not want to do it, tell him so (es). 18. If he really said that, he ought to be ashamed. 19. Whose horse can we borrow if ours is still lame? 20. If he had worn his overcoat, he would not have caught cold.

## LESSON XVIII

### THE SUBJUNCTIVE (continued)

#### Lernen Sie auswendig:

1. Hätten Sie es uns nur früher gesagt! *If you had only told us sooner!*
2. Hätten Sie es getan? *Should you have done it?*
3. Das wäre schade! *That would be a pity.*
4. Ich hätte das getan? *Do you mean to say that I did that?*
5. Ich wollte, es wäre wahr. *I wish it were true.*

#### A

Review the various uses of the subjunctive, omitting the subjunctive in indirect discourse.

The **optative** subjunctive denotes a wish. In the pluperfect tense it may usually be construed as in the protasis (the *if*-clause) of an unreal conditional sentence; in the past tense, as in the protasis of an unreal or a less vivid future conditional sentence; cf. B 1 3. In the present tense it is used only in certain formal expressions; cf. B 4, 5.

The **imperative (hortatory)** subjunctive replaces the missing forms of the imperative mood. It is usually translated by *let*, and is closely related to the optative subjunctive in the present tense. Cf. B 6, 7.

The **unreal** subjunctive may usually be construed as in the apodosis (conclusion) of unreal conditional sentences. It is generally translated by *should* or *would*. Cf. B 8.

The **potential** subjunctive expresses possibility or contingency. It may often be construed as in the apodosis (conclusion) of less vivid future conditional sentences, and is then usually translated by *should* or *would*; cf. B 9. Under the potential subjunctive may also be classified the subjunctive of *softened assertion* (cf. B 10) and the *dubitative* subjunctive (cf. B 11).

## B

1. Hätten wir das doch gewußt! Wenn wir das nur gewußt hätten! 2. Wäre ich nur reich! Wenn ich doch reich wäre! 3. Wenn er nur morgen käme! 4. Gott sei mit euch! 5. Er lebe hoch! 6. Jeder tue seine Pflicht! 7. Vergessen wir das nicht! 8. Ich hätte das anders gemacht (*or* Ich würde das anders gemacht haben). 9. Es wäre Unſinn, ſo viel Geld auszugeben (*or* Es würde Unſinn ſein, ſo viel Geld auszugeben). 10. Das dürfte der Fall ſein. 11. Ich hätte ſo etwas geſagt? Wißt du nicht recht bei Sinnen?

## C

1. Könnteſt du mir morgen eine Antwort geben?
2. Hätten Sie das nicht früher tun können?
3. Sollten wir es ihm ſagen?
4. Hätte er das tun ſollen?

5. Wo möchtest du die Ferien zubringen?
6. Dürfte ich Sie fragen, wo Sie ihn gesehen haben?
7. Hättest du ihm geholfen?
8. Wäre es nicht am besten, ihm alles zu sagen?
9. Würdest du es an meiner Stelle tun?
10. Müßten Sie in dem Falle wirklich hier bleiben?

## D

1. If I could only see him!
2. I wish that you had been here.
3. God bless you, my son.
4. Long live the king!
5. The next time let him speak the truth.
6. Let everybody bring somebody along.
7. Let us begin at once.
8. Let us go home, I am tired.
9. Otherwise we should not have done it.
10. But for (Ohne) your help we should not be near through.
11. In that case they would have acted differently.
12. I could help you to-morrow.
13. Then he surely would be a fool.
14. If she only did not laugh so much!
15. Would that not be fine?

## E

1. Let everybody join in when we sing (wenn gesungen wird).
2. If he had only let me know it!
3. Then he would have to act differently.
4. God grant that they arrive safely.
5. Would that not be terrible?
6. I could never have finished (fertigbringen) it alone.
7. Let us prepare ourselves for the worst.
8. May his soul rest in peace.
9. I would not do that for anything (um alles) in the world.
10. Let us dress before supper (= before the supper).
11. In that case you would probably have done the same thing (omit).
12. If he would only do it!
13. Let him not forget that I am still master in this house.
14. If I only had more time!
15. I could not have got along (fertigwerden) without her.

16. Would that not have been mean of him? 17. Would that I had never seen her! 18. Might I speak a moment with you alone? 19. Do you mean to say that I told him a falsehood? 20. We could not do it without his consent.

## LESSON XIX

## SUBJUNCTIVE OF INDIRECT DISCOURSE

**Lernen Sie auswendig:**

1. Er sagte, er habe Hunger. *He said he was hungry.*
2. Sie sagten, sie hätten Durst. *They said they were thirsty.*
3. Ich fragte ihn, ob er krank sei. *I asked him whether he was sick.*
4. Ich fragte ihn, ob er gestern krank gewesen sei. *I asked him whether he was sick yesterday.*
5. Ich sagte ihm, er solle auf uns warten. *I told him to wait for us.*

## A

The subjunctive of indirect discourse is used in the object clause after words meaning *say* or *think*. Cf. B 1.

But if the verb of the principal clause is in the first person of the present tense, the indicative is regularly used in the object clause. Cf. B 2. The indicative is of frequent occurrence also after the other forms of the present tense. Cf. B 3.

The indicative is generally used after all tenses of verbs implying certainty, as *know*, *prove*, *see*, *show*. Cf. B 4.

The subjunctive of indirect discourse indicates that the speaker does not assume responsibility for the statement contained in the object clause. It stresses the fact that the speaker is merely reporting what somebody else said, thought, hoped, or feared.

Tense of the object clause: (1) A past indicative of direct discourse becomes a perfect subjunctive (or pluperfect, if the perfect form is identical with that of the indicative) in indirect discourse. Cf. B 5. (2) Otherwise, the same tense is generally retained in indirect discourse that was used, or would be used, in direct discourse, provided this results in a subjunctive form different from that of the indicative. Cf. B 6, 7.<sup>1</sup> (3) If the retention of the tense of direct discourse would result in a subjunctive form identical with that of the indicative, the past subjunctive is used instead of the present subjunctive, the pluperfect subjunctive instead of the perfect subjunctive, the present conditional instead of the future subjunctive, and the perfect conditional instead of the future perfect subjunctive. Cf. B 8, 9; 10.<sup>2</sup>

When the indicative is retained in indirect discourse, the same sequence of tenses as in English is generally used. Cf. B 4.

Indirect questions are a form of indirect discourse, and have the subjunctive mood in the object clause unless the governing verb is in the present tense, in which case the indicative is generally used. Cf. B 11, 12.

An imperative of direct discourse is expressed in indirect discourse by the present or past subjunctive of *hätten* with the infinitive of the verb in question. Cf. B 13. Note that English may express the imperative idea in indirect discourse in three ways. Cf. D 5, 6.

<sup>1</sup> However, the same sequence of tenses as in English is also employed: *Er sagte, daß er kein Geld bei sich hätte* (*instead of habe*); *er sagte, daß er es schon getan hätte* (*instead of habe*); *er sagte, daß er nicht kommen würde* (*instead of werde*).

<sup>2</sup> To avoid ambiguity a pluperfect indicative of direct discourse may be retained: *Sie sagten, daß sie das Haus schon verkauft hatten*.

Observe that daß may introduce the object clause or may be omitted, as in English. But if daß is omitted, the object clause takes the normal instead of the transposed order. Cf. B 14.

## B

1. Er sagte, daß er krank sei.    2. Ich sage, daß er krank ist.
3. Hans sagt, daß sein Bruder krank ist (*or* sei).    4. Er wußte, daß sie recht hatte.
5. Er sagte: „Ich hatte gestern Kopfschmerzen.“ Er sagte mir eben, daß er gestern Kopfschmerzen gehabt habe.
6. Er sagte: „Ich habe keinen roten Heller mehr.“ Er sagte, daß er keinen roten Heller mehr habe.
7. Er antwortete: „Ich werde morgen kommen.“ Er antwortete, daß er am nächsten Tage kommen werde.
8. Sie behaupteten, daß sie kein Geld bei sich hätten (*instead of* haben).
9. Sie haben geantwortet, daß sie es nie tun würden (*instead of* werden).
10. Sie sagten, daß sie am Tage vorher krank gewesen seien und daß sie also nicht gearbeitet hätten (*instead of* haben).
11. Er fragte mich, wieviel Uhr es sei.
12. Er will wissen, wieviel Uhr es ist.
13. Ich sagte Hans, daß er nach Hause gehen solle (*or* sollte).
14. Er sagte, er habe Zahnschmerzen.

## C

*Put into indirect discourse:*

Der kleine Hans ging zum erstenmal in die Schule, und da fragte ihn sein Lehrer: „Hans, wie viele Zähne hat der Mensch?“ Ohne sich lange zu besinnen, antwortete der kleine Hans: „Ein ganzes Maulvoll.“ Während der Geographiestunde wurde Hans sehr aufgeregt. „Was willst du, Hans?“ fragte der Lehrer. „Ach, Herr Lehrer,“ sagte Hans, „zwei Meilen rechts von Stuttgart auf der Landkarte sitzt eine Spinne.“ Eines Tages trat

Hans lautweinend ins Schulzimmer. „Weine doch nicht so, Hans,“ sagte der Rektor, „und erzähle mir, was dir passiert ist.“ „Ach,“ schluchzte der kleine Hans, „zwei Knaben quälten einen Esel. Ich habe bloß zugeesehen. Da kam gerade der Herr Lehrer vorbei und gab mir eine Ohrfeige. Ich habe dem Esel doch nichts getan.“ Darauf bekam Hans noch eine Ohrfeige von dem Rektor.

## D

1. He asks where your father is. 2. They asked him what he was doing. 3. I believe that he is right. 4. They believe that he will not come. 5. He said I should stay at home. 6. He told me to open the door. He said I was to do it. 7. They thought that they would have enough money. 8. He said that he would soon see them. 9. They knew where he was and that he was working. 10. I was convinced that he was telling the truth. 11. I saw him yesterday and he told me that he was sick last week and could not work. 12. I asked him why he did not go to the concert last night and he replied that he did not have time. 13. They maintained that he was wrong. 14. He was of the opinion that they had no right to it (dazu). 15. He says he knows nothing about it.

## E

1. I told you not to do that. 2. He will tell you that he did not do it. 3. I heard that they had sold their house. 4. He asked her where she lived and she answered that she lived on Kaiser street. 5. He asked them where they lived before they moved to New York. 6. One of them said he lived in St. Louis before he moved to New York. 7. He said that he was sorry and that he would pay for it. 8. They said that they had no money with them, but that they would

pay me a hundred marks the next day. 9. She knew that he had her book. 10. She said that he had her book. 11. I believe that he can do it and that he will do it. 12. He says he is hungry. 13. It was evident that he knew nothing about it. 14. He hoped that she had forgotten it. 15. He proved that they were wrong. 16. Tell me who that gentleman is. 17. They feared that he would lose his way in the forest. 18. I feel that he is the cause of it. 19. They saw that it was impossible. 20. They told her to buy herself a new dress.

## LESSON XX

## PASSIVE VOICE

**Lernen Sie auswendig:**

1. Um Antwort wird gebeten. *An answer is requested.*
2. Das versteht sich. *That is understood.*
3. Das läßt sich leicht machen (sagen). *That is easily done (said).*
4. Das ist zu erwarten. *That is to be expected.*
5. Ich habe sagen hören, daß . . . *I have heard it said that . . .*

## A

Review the conjugation of the passive voice. What is the auxiliary of the passive voice in German? in English?

Distinguish between the *true passive* (werden with the past participle), as in B 1, 3, and the *apparent passive* (sein with the past participle), as in B 2, 4. The difference between the two is inherent in the difference in meaning of werden and sein. Werden means *to become, to pass into the state of*. The true passive, therefore, represents the action of the verb

as being exerted upon the subject at the time in question. The apparent passive does not denote an action at all, but represents the state or condition of the subject resulting from an action prior to the time in question.<sup>1</sup>

What preposition is used to denote the agent and what one to denote the means? Cf. B 5, 6.

Intransitive verbs may only be used impersonally in the passive. Cf. B 7.

Note that the passive is used much less in German than in English. This is due to the fact that German idiom prefers other constructions for the passive, as (1) the active with *man* (cf. B 8, 9); (2) the reflexive construction (cf. B 10); (3) *lassen* with an active infinitive (cf. above, sentence 3); (4) *sein* with an active infinitive (cf. above, sentence 4).

## B

1. Gestern wurde die Tür um vier Uhr geschlossen. 2. Ich konnte nicht hineinschauen, die Tür war geschlossen. 3. Der Brief wurde heute morgen geschrieben. 4. Als ich heute morgen hinfam, war der Brief geschrieben. 5. Er ist von dem Hund gebissen worden. 6. Durch solche Mittel wird nicht viel erreicht. 7. Im

<sup>1</sup> In translating into German the student must determine whether in the English sentence the action itself or the condition resulting therefrom is emphasized, and must translate accordingly. Forms with *being*, for example, *The door is (was) being closed*, should be rendered by the passive with *werden*: *Die Tür wird (wurde) geschlossen*. But a sentence like *At four o'clock the door was closed* has two meanings: (1) It may mean that the act of closing took place at four o'clock. This meaning should be rendered by the passive with *werden*: *Um vier Uhr wurde die Tür geschlossen*. (2) But it may also mean that at four o'clock the door was already closed, the act of closing having taken place at a time previous to four o'clock. This meaning should be expressed by the construction with *sein*: *Um vier Uhr war die Tür geschlossen*.

Nebenzimmer wurde so laut gesprochen, daß ich nicht einschlafen konnte. 8. Man wird das Haus morgen um zwei Uhr verkaufen. 9. Man riet mir, es nicht zu tun. 10. Die betreffende Stelle findet sich auf Seite 49.

## C

*Change from the active to the passive voice :*

1. Der Lehrer lobt den fleißigen Schüler.
2. Der Knabe wird den Hund schlagen.
3. Der Hund hatte das kleine Kind gebissen.
4. Man schließt die Tür um sechs Uhr.
5. Wem hat man das Haus verkauft?

*Change from the passive to the active voice :*

1. Viele Leute sind von ihm betrogen worden.
2. Dieses Haus wurde von meinem Vater gebaut.
3. Dieser Brief muß von dir geschrieben werden.
4. In Frankreich wird viel Wein getrunken.
5. Sie wurde öfters im Scherz Mischenbrüdel genannt.

## D

1. He was not recognized even by his own brother.
2. This letter ought to be mailed at once.
3. Since then he has not been (man) seen.
4. You will be arrested if you do that.
5. Only German is spoken here.
6. The house was surrounded by trees.
7. This book has been translated into many foreign languages.
8. I honestly (wahrhaftig) believe these shoes are made out of paper.
9. I have not been asked yet.
10. When I got there (hinsommen), the horse was already sold.
11. It was (Man) hoped that he would not do it.
12. More is gained by kindness than by

severity. 13. Many houses are being built this year. 14. This dress can be easily washed (= lets itself easily wash). 15. These goods are easily sold (= sell themselves easily).

## E

1. This little child is neglected by its parents. 2. He was captured by cunning. 3. It is (Man) believed that his younger son did it. 4. There was singing and dancing (*impers. passive*) all night long (*hindurch*). 5. He is not to be envied on account of his money. 6. I was (Man) told not to do that. 7. The fires were already made, the rooms were put in order, and the table was set, so I had nothing at all to do. 8. How much have you been (man) offered for your house? 9. He was sentenced to be hanged on the first of May. 10. He has been spoilt by his grandparents. 11. Since my debts are now paid, I can begin to save some money. 12. He would have been cheated out of a hundred marks if I had not warned him. 13. The meat could not be (*lassen*) cut, it was so tough. 14. I am sorry, but it cannot be (*lassen*) helped (*ändern*). 15. That is easily learned (*refl.*) 16. These stoves are being used everywhere now. 17. My shoes are worn out. I must buy me a new pair. 18. He was run over by an automobile and seriously injured. 19. That is not to be thought of. 20. He was arrested and put in jail.

## REVIEW QUESTIONS

Illustrate each question, whenever possible, with German sentences and translate the sentences into English.<sup>1</sup>

1. What subordinating conjunctions may be omitted? How does their omission affect the order of words?
2. What is the difference in the use of *der* and *welcher* as relative pronouns?
3. What is the force of the comparative preceded by *immer*?
4. How is the reciprocal relation expressed?
5. What are the most common meanings of *wollen*?
6. What is the force of the subjunctive in indirect discourse?
7. What is the auxiliary of the passive voice in German? in English?
8. State the chief differences between German and English in the use of capitals.
9. What is transposed order? When is it used?
10. What is the relative position of direct and indirect objects?
11. When are phrases consisting of *am* and the superlative used?
12. Name the prepositions that govern the genitive.
13. State the usual meanings of *dürfen* and *müssen*.
14. After what verbs is the subjunctive used in indirect discourse?
15. What is the difference between the true passive and the apparent passive? How are they expressed in German? in English?
16. What consonants have a different value when occurring in final position from their value when in medial or initial position? What is meant by final position?
17. What are the chief differences between German and English in the use of the articles?
18. When may *was* be used as a simple relative?

<sup>1</sup> A convenient way to use the review questions is to assign a certain number of them with each lesson in Part Two.

19. What is the absolute superlative? How is it expressed?
20. Name the prepositions that govern (1) only the dative, (2) only the accusative.
21. State the usual meanings of *können* and *mögen*.
22. In what kind of conditional sentences is the subjunctive used? What tenses are used?
23. What is the force of the imperative subjunctive?
24. Describe the pronunciation of *ö*, *ö*.
25. Give the rules for the use of the pronouns of address (*du*, *ihr*, *Sie*).
26. What verbs take *sein* as the auxiliary of the perfect tenses?
27. How are subordinate clauses punctuated?
28. When are the strong endings of the adjective used, and when the weak?
29. State the rules of orthography that determine the quantity of a vowel.
30. How are fractional numbers formed?
31. Which prepositions govern either the dative or the accusative? When do they take the dative? When the accusative?
32. What are the most common meanings of *soßen*?
33. To what extent may the conditional mood replace the subjunctive in conditional sentences?
34. Describe the pronunciation of *ü*, *ü*.
35. How does German express the English progressive and emphatic forms?
36. What is the relative position of adverbs of place and time?
37. What peculiarity of form do the modal auxiliaries show in the perfect tenses when accompanied by the infinitive of another verb?
38. What other verbs, besides the modal auxiliaries, show this peculiarity?
39. What is the position of the tense auxiliary in a subordinate clause having the peculiar forms referred to in questions 37 and 38?

40. Give the chief rules governing the accentuation of words.
41. Give as many instances as you can where German and English differ in the use of tenses.
42. How are demonstrative, personal, relative, and interrogative pronouns rendered when they are governed by a preposition and do not refer to a living object?
43. Give an exception to the general rule for the use of strong and weak adjectives.
44. What is the position in the clause of the separable prefix?
45. What does the optative subjunctive denote? What tenses are used?
46. When is *ß* used, and when *f*?
47. When is *ff* used, and when *ß*?
48. How are imperative sentences punctuated?
49. Name the various uses of *der*.
50. How are ordinal numbers formed? To what extent are they declined?
51. Name the doubtful prefixes.
52. Illustrate the use of the unreal subjunctive.
53. What preposition is used with the passive voice to denote the agent? the means?
54. When is the definite article used with proper names?
55. When is the descriptive adjective declined?
56. Name the inseparable prefixes. How does the conjugation of inseparable verbs differ from that of simple verbs?
57. Give as many verbs as you can that are impersonal in German, but not impersonal in English.
58. What does the potential subjunctive express?
59. What is meant by the impersonal passive?
60. Where do the infinitive and the participle stand in principal clauses? in subordinate clauses?
61. Give the most obvious and common meanings of the inseparable prefixes.

62. What are the reflexive pronouns?
63. Discuss the use of tenses in the subjunctive of indirect discourse.
64. What are the most common substitutes for the passive?
65. What is inverted order? How does German differ from English in the use of inverted order?
66. How is the expletive *there* translated?
67. Give as many reflexive verbs as you can.
68. How is the imperative of direct discourse expressed in indirect discourse in German? in English?
69. What order of words is used in exclamatory sentences?
70. Illustrate the difference between the reflexive and the intensive pronouns.
71. In what person is the verb of a relative clause when the antecedent of the subject is a personal pronoun of the first or second person?
72. Give the principal rules of syllabication.

## PART TWO

### LESSON XXI

#### Lernen Sie auswendig:

1. Er galt für sehr geizig. *He had the reputation of being very stingy.*
2. Er verstand mich ganz falsch. *He misunderstood me entirely.*
3. Können Sie es mir nicht billiger lassen? *Can you not let me have it cheaper?*
4. Das schenke ich Ihnen. *I will give you that.*
5. Er freute sich, daß er einen so guten Kauf gemacht habe. *He was pleased that he had made such a good bargain.*

#### A

#### Ein zufriedener Kunde

Ein reicher alter Mann, der für sehr geizig galt, ging eines Morgens zum Fleischer, um einen Suppenknochen zu kaufen. Er suchte sich einen schönen Knochen aus und fragte den Fleischer, was er koste. Der Fleischer, ein sehr gutmütiger Mensch, antwortete: „Ach, den schenke ich Ihnen.“ Der alte Mann, der ein bißchen schwerhörig war, verstand ihn ganz falsch und sagte: „Können Sie mir den Knochen nicht etwas billiger lassen?“ Der Fleischer besann sich einen Augenblick und antwortete: „Nun, ich werde Ihnen den Knochen für zwanzig Pfennig lassen.“ Da verließ der alte Mann den Laden mit seinem Knochen und freute sich, daß er einen so guten Kauf gemacht habe.

## B

1. Wohin ging ein alter Mann? 2. Was wollte er kaufen?  
 3. War er sehr arm? 4. Was tat er, als er in den Laden kam?  
 5. Wen fragte er nach dem Preise des Knochens? 6. Was sagte  
 der Fleischer? 7. Verstand der alte Mann, was der Fleischer  
 sagte? 8. Warum nicht? 9. Was sagte er zum Fleischer?  
 10. Was antwortete der Fleischer? 11. Kaufte der alte Weizhals  
 den Knochen? 12. Warum freute er sich? 13. Erzählen Sie  
 diese Geschichte!

## C

1. Although Mr. Miller is rich, he is also stingy. 2. One  
 day he went to the butcher to buy some<sup>1</sup> ham. 3. He saw  
 a nice soup-bone lying<sup>2</sup> on the counter and said to the  
 butcher: "How much is this bone worth?" 4. The butcher  
 said that he would give him the bone. 5. But Mr. Miller is  
 a little hard of hearing and he did not understand what the  
 butcher said. 6. So he asked the butcher if he could not let  
 him have the bone a little cheaper. 7. Thereupon the butcher  
 answered that he would let him have the bone for ten pfen-  
 nigs. 8. Mr. Miller then bought it and went home. 9. He  
 was pleased with the bargain<sup>3</sup> he had made.

## D

1. Old man Brown<sup>4</sup> has the reputation of being very  
 stingy. 2. He is a butcher, but I do not believe that he has  
 much money. 3. Yesterday he sold me two pounds<sup>5</sup> of<sup>1</sup> ham  
 for two marks and ten pfennigs. 4. A pfennig is only one  
 quarter of<sup>1</sup> a<sup>1</sup> cent in American money. 5. He ought to give  
 me a nice soup-bone once in a while, for I buy a lot of meat

<sup>1</sup> Omit.<sup>3</sup> Do not omit the relative pronoun.<sup>2</sup> Use the present infinitive.<sup>4</sup> The old Mr. Brown.<sup>5</sup> Singular.

from him. 6. Do you like<sup>1</sup> soup? 7. Did you ever eat beer soup? 8. Several soup-bones were lying on the counter. He said I should pick myself out a nice one. 9. You probably misunderstood him. Ask him about it again. 10. He said it without thinking.<sup>2</sup> 11. He is a good-natured fellow and has many customers. 12. When I was leaving the shop I saw our cook on the other side of the street. 13. I told her about the bargain I had made. 14. Are you satisfied with your new cook? 15. Yes, indeed, we are entirely satisfied with her. 16. I am glad of that, for a good cook is hard to find. 17. You are right, and I am glad that you have a good one too. 18. You and Mr. Smith must spend next Sunday with<sup>3</sup> us. Bring the children along. 19. I thank you very much.<sup>4</sup> How early shall we come? 20. Come as early as possible. We will take a walk before dinner.<sup>5</sup>

## LESSON XXII

### Lernen Sie auswendig:

1. Er geht auf Freiersfüßen. *He is going a wooing.*
2. Er kratzte sich hinter den Ohren. *He scratched his head.*
3. Was meinen Sie damit? *What do you mean by that?*
4. Was machst du hier? *What are you doing here?*

### A

### Eine pfiffige Antwort

Ein Bauer, der eines Abends spät nach Hause kehrte, sah ein Licht auf seinem Hofe, welches sich hin und her bewegte. Als er nachsah, fand er, daß es der Knecht eines Nachbarn war, welcher eine Laterne trug. „Was machst du hier?“ herrschte ihn der

<sup>1</sup> gern.    <sup>2</sup> Infinitive.    <sup>3</sup> bei.    <sup>4</sup> Omit.    <sup>5</sup> before the dinner.

Bauer an. „Ich gehe auf Freiersfüßen“, antwortete der Knecht. „Was?“ rief der Bauer. „Du gehst auf Freiersfüßen? Mit einer Laterne? Du Dummkopf! Ich habe nie eine Laterne beim Freien gebraucht.“ „Nein, Bauer,“ jagte der Knecht, indem er sich entfernte, „das kann ein jeder sehen, daß Sie keine gebraucht haben.“ Der Bauer fragte sich hinter den Thren und wunderte sich, was der Knecht damit gemeint habe.

## B

1. Wohin ging ein Bauer eines Abends? 2. Was sah er auf seinem Hofe? 3. Was fand er, als er nachsah? 4. Was sagte er zu dem Knecht? 5. Was antwortete der Knecht? 6. Hatte der Bauer eine Laterne beim Freien gebraucht? 7. Was sagte der Knecht zu dem Bauer, indem er sich entfernte? 8. Was tat der Bauer? 9. Wissen Sie, was der Knecht mit seiner Antwort meinte? 10. Erzählen Sie diese Geschichte!

## C

1. Last week I visited my brother who lives in the country. 2. Late one evening we saw a light moving<sup>1</sup> to and fro in the back yard. 3. "Jack," I said to my brother, "see what that is." 4. When my brother came back he said: "It was our neighbor's farm hand. He was carrying a lantern. 5. I asked him what he was doing here and he answered that he was going a wooing. 6. I told him that he was a blockhead and that I had never used a lantern when wooing. 7. Just think what he answered!" exclaimed my brother. 8. "Well, what?" I asked curiously. 9. "He answered that everybody could see that I had not used one. 10. I wonder<sup>2</sup> what he meant by that," said my brother, scratching<sup>3</sup> his head.

<sup>1</sup> Expand into a relative clause.

<sup>2</sup> Ich möchte wissen.

<sup>3</sup> Use a clause with *indem* and the same idiom as is used in the German model.

## D

1. Everybody knows Henry Miller, the rich peasant. 2. He goes to town every Saturday and does not<sup>1</sup> return home until<sup>1</sup> late in the evening. 3. Last week he went to town as usual on Saturday afternoon. 4. He met several old acquaintances with whom he chatted until it began to grow dark. 5. He still had much to attend to. 6. So it was half past eight before he started back. 7. He was tired and went to sleep before he knew it. 8. He did not<sup>2</sup> wake up until<sup>2</sup> the horse stopped at the yard gate. 9. The first thing<sup>3</sup> that Miller noticed was a light near the stable. 10. He rubbed his eyes and said, "Am I dreaming?" 11. The light now began to move to and fro. 12. "I must see what that is," said Miller. 13. He found a farm hand who worked for<sup>4</sup> one of the neighbors. 14. When the farm hand told him what he was doing, Miller exclaimed: 15. "So far as I am concerned you may go a wooing as much as you want to. 16. But what on earth are you doing with a lantern? 17. Do you always use a lantern when wooing? I never used one on<sup>4</sup> such an<sup>3</sup> occasion." 18. The farm hand gave him a sly answer by saying<sup>5</sup> that everybody could see that he had not used one. 19. When Miller related the incident to his friends the next day, they looked at each other and smiled. 20. They scratched their heads and said: "We do not know what the farm hand meant by that. He must<sup>6</sup> be a blockhead."

<sup>1</sup> not . . . until = *erst*.

<sup>2</sup> not . . . until = *erst* . . . *als*.

<sup>3</sup> Omit.

<sup>4</sup> *bei*.

<sup>5</sup> Use a clause with *indem*.

<sup>6</sup> Use *ja* with the verb.

## LESSON XXIII

**Lernen Sie auswendig:**

1. Er fuhr hinaus aufs Land. *He drove out into the country.*
2. Er hatte keine Streichhölzer bei sich. *He had no matches with him.*
3. Zum Glück kam gerade ein Bauer daher. *Luckily a peasant happened to come along.*
4. Er zündete sich eine Zigarre an. *He lit a cigar.*

## A

**Unverschämte**

Vor einiger Zeit fuhr ein Reisender hinaus auf das Land. Er wollte sich eine Zigarre anzünden, fand aber zu seinem großen Verdruß, daß er keine Streichhölzer bei sich hatte. Da kam gerade ein Bauer daher, und der Reisende fragte ihn, ob er ihm ein Streichholz geben könne. Zum Glück hatte der Bauer welche bei sich, und er gab dem Reisenden eins. Um seine Dankbarkeit zu erweisen, reichte der Reisende dem Bauer eine Handvoll Zigarren hin. Dieser nahm, anstatt einer, die ganze Handvoll. Als er das verblüffte Gesicht des Reisenden sah, bekam er sich einen Augenblick, und nachdem er die Zigarren sicher geborgen hatte, sagte er: „Bitte, nehmen Sie noch ein Streichholz!“

## B

1. Wohin fuhr ein Reisender? 2. Warum konnte er sich keine Zigarre anzünden? 3. Wer kam gerade daher? 4. Gab ihm der Bauer ein Streichholz? 5. Was tat der Reisende? 6. Wie viele Zigarren nahm der Bauer? 7. Was sagte der Reisende zu dem Bauer? 8. Wie sah der Reisende aus? 9. Was sagte der Bauer endlich? 10. Erzählen Sie diese Geschichte!

## C

1. A traveler had driven out into the country. 2. He wanted to smoke a cigar, but found that he did not have a match with him. 3. "That's enough to drive one to distraction,"<sup>1</sup> he said to himself. 4. Just then a peasant came along, and the traveler called out to him, "My friend, can you give me a match?" 5. Without saying<sup>2</sup> a word the peasant gave him a match. 6. The traveler said, "Thank you<sup>3</sup> very much,<sup>3</sup>" and then lit a cigar. 7. He held out a handful of cigars to the peasant and asked him whether he smoked. 8. He thought that the peasant would take only one cigar. 9. To the traveler's great vexation he took the whole handful. 10. Although the traveler said nothing, he looked so dumbfounded that the peasant said he should take another match. 11. The traveler thought that the peasant was very impudent.

## D

1. Will you have a cigar? 2. No, thanks, I do not smoke any more. 3. Two years ago, however, I was smoking from ten to fifteen cigars a day.<sup>4</sup> 4. The doctor said I had to give up smoking<sup>5</sup> entirely. 5. I decided to give it up at once. 6. At first it went hard, but now I no longer care to smoke. 7. I can work better and save more money than formerly. 8. Some time ago I was taking a walk in the country. 9. I met a friend who asked me for a match. 10. I told him that I did not have any with me. 11. "Well, how can I light my cigar, if I have no match?" exclaimed my friend sadly. 12. "There comes a peasant," I answered, "ask him if he has

<sup>1</sup> Das ist ja zum Verzweifeln!

<sup>3</sup> Omit.

<sup>2</sup> Ohne . . . zu with the infinitive.

<sup>4</sup> the day, accusative.

<sup>5</sup> the smoking.

some with him." 13. The peasant gave him a match and was about to pass on. 14. In order to show his appreciation my friend said, "Please take a cigar." 15. The peasant took the whole handful of cigars that my friend held out to him. 16. My friend looked at the peasant dumbfounded. 17. After the latter had stowed the cigars safely away, he asked my friend if he would like to have another match. 18. "No," he answered, "for I have no more cigars." 19. "That is certainly<sup>1</sup> an impudent fellow," exclaimed my friend, after the peasant had gone.<sup>2</sup> 20. "Perhaps he is stupid and does not know any better,<sup>3</sup>" I said.

## LESSON XXIV

### Lernen Sie auswendig:

1. Er setzte sich neben mich. *He sat down beside me.* Er saß neben mir. *He sat beside me.*
2. Er legte es beiseite. *He laid it aside.*
3. Er weiß nicht, was sich schießt. *He does not know what is proper.*
4. Wie gefällt es Ihnen hier? *How do you like it here?*

### A

### Wurft wider Wurft

Eine Frau trat in das Wartezimmer eines Bahnhofes und setzte sich neben einen Irländer, der eine Pfeife rauchte. Als sie sah, daß der Irländer keine Anstalt machte, seine Pfeife beiseitezulegen, sagte sie zu ihm: „Wenn Sie wüßten, was sich schießt, so würden Sie nicht in der Gegenwart einer Dame rauchen.“

<sup>1</sup> ja.

<sup>2</sup> sich entfernen.

<sup>3</sup> knows it not better.

„Nun,“ erwiderte der Irländer, „wenn es Ihnen nicht gefällt, so können Sie sich wo anders hinsetzen.“ Die Frau maß ihn mit böshaften Blicken und rief ganz empört: „So eine Unverschämtheit! Wären Sie mein Mann, so würde ich Sie sofort vergiften!“ „Madame,“ sagte der Irländer, indem er seine Pfeife gemütlich weiterrauchte, „wären Sie meine Frau, so würde ich das Gift nehmen.“

## B

1. Wo saß ein Irländer? 2. Was tat er? 3. Wer trat in das Wartezimmer? 4. Neben wen setzte sie sich? 5. Hörte der Irländer auf zu rauchen? 6. Was sagte die Frau zu ihm? 7. Was erwiderte der Irländer darauf? 8. Was tat die Frau dann? 9. Was, sagte sie, möchte sie gern tun? 10. Wie lautete die Antwort des Irländers? 11. Erzählen Sie die Anekdote!

## C

1. An Irishman was sitting in the waiting room of a railway station, smoking<sup>1</sup> a pipe. 2. The door opened, a woman entered and sat down by him. 3. The Irishman continued comfortably to smoke his pipe, whereupon the woman said: 4. "Lay your pipe aside. You ought not to smoke in the presence of a lady." 5. But the Irishman replied: "I know what is proper. 6. If you don't like it, take a seat somewhere else." 7. The woman jumped up, gazed<sup>2</sup> at him furiously, and exclaimed: 8. "Such a piece of impudence! If I had some<sup>3</sup> poison, I should poison you!" 9. The Irishman smiled and replied, "Madam, if I were as ugly as you, I should gladly take the poison." 10. The woman left the

<sup>1</sup> and smoked.<sup>2</sup> Cf. the German model.<sup>3</sup> Omit.

waiting room highly indignant and walked very excitedly back and forth on the platform until the train arrived. 11. The Irishman put his pipe back in his mouth and smoked calmly on.

## D

1. Our cousin wrote us that he should arrive at half past two. 2. I told my brother to go to<sup>1</sup> the station to meet<sup>2</sup> him. 3. But he said that he had caught cold and ought not to go out in<sup>3</sup> such bad weather. 4. It was a quarter of three when I arrived at<sup>1</sup> the station. 5. I found my cousin in the waiting room. 6. He was talking with an old man who was smoking a pipe. 7. Although there<sup>4</sup> were several women in the waiting room, the old man made no motion to lay his pipe aside. 8. Finally one of the women said that he ought not to smoke in the presence of a lady. 9. The old man answered that he knew what was proper. 10. The woman became indignant and said that he was impudent. 11. She said she should give him poison if he were her husband. 12. The old man smiled and said that he should gladly take the poison if she were his wife. 13. The woman went out on the platform. 14. She slammed the door behind her when she went out. 15. When we were going home I asked my cousin who the old man was. 16. "He is a horse dealer," my cousin answered. "I became acquainted with him on the train. 17. His name is Baumgärtner. He lives in St. Louis. 18. He intends to spend the winter in this city. 19. I hope<sup>5</sup> he will like it here. 20. He is an interesting old fellow and I like to talk<sup>6</sup> with him."

<sup>1</sup> auf.<sup>2</sup> abholen.<sup>3</sup> bei.<sup>4</sup> Omit.<sup>5</sup> Hoffentlich.<sup>6</sup> sich unterhalten.

## LESSON XXV

## Lernen Sie auswendig:

1. Er fuhr an dem Hause vorbei. *He drove past the house.*
2. Er fuhr sich mit der Hand durch das Haar. *He ran his hand through his hair.*
3. Er kam zu einem frühzeitigen Tod. *He came to an untimely end.*
4. Ich möchte doch wissen, was . . . *I should just like to know what . . .*

## A

## Gut bezahlt

Ein reicher Kaufmann machte in seinem Automobil einen Ausflug aufs Land. Als er an einem Bauer, der am Wege stand, vorbeifuhr, sprang plötzlich ein Hund vor das Automobil. Ehe der Kaufmann anhalten konnte, hatte er den Hund schon überfahren, und dieser kam zu einem frühzeitigen Tod. Der Kaufmann sprach sein Bedauern aus und fragte den Bauer, ob vierzig Mark den Schaden decken würden. Der Bauer antwortete, daß das genügend sei, worauf ihm der Kaufmann das Geld reichte und sogleich weiterfuhr. Der Bauer sah dem Automobil nach, bis es verschwunden war. Da nahm er seinen Hut ab, fuhr sich mit der Hand durch das Haar und sagte traurig: „Ich möchte doch wissen, wem das arme Tier gehört hat!“

## B

1. Wer machte einen Ausflug aufs Land? 2. Wen sah er am Wege stehen? 3. Was geschah, als er am Bauer vorbeifuhr? 4. Wurde der Hund überfahren? 5. Was tat der Kaufmann? 6. Was fragte er den Bauer? 7. Was antwortete der Bauer?

8. Was tat der Kaufmann, nachdem er dem Bauer das Geld gegeben hatte? 9. Wie lange blieb der Bauer noch am Wege stehen? 10. Was sagte er zu sich selbst? 11. Erzählen Sie die Geschichte!

## C

1. To-morrow the rich merchant will take an outing in the country in his automobile. 2. When he passes by our house I shall be standing by the roadside. 3. Suddenly a little dog will jump in front of the automobile. 4. The merchant will not be able to stop until he has driven over the dog. 5. He will of course believe that the dog belongs to me. 6. He will ask me how much the dog is worth. 7. I shall tell him that fifteen dollars will cover the damage. 8. I know that he will hand me the money and drive on immediately. 9. I shall watch the automobile until it is out of sight. 10. Then I shall take off my hat, run my hand through my hair, and sadly exclaim: 11. "You poor beast! You have come to an untimely end. 12. But it's an ill wind that blows nobody good.<sup>1</sup>"

## D

1. "Should you like to take an outing in the country to-morrow in my automobile?" 2. "Yes, indeed. That would be<sup>2</sup> great.<sup>3</sup> 3. Who else is going along?" "My wife and her sister from<sup>4</sup> New York. 4. I hope we shall have good weather to-morrow." 5. It was a glorious day. There was not a cloud<sup>5</sup> in the<sup>6</sup> sky. 6. We made an early start, for we wanted to be back again before supper.<sup>7</sup> 7. When we drove

<sup>1</sup> Kein Unglück ist so groß, es trägt ein Glück im Schoß.

<sup>2</sup> Use ja with the verb.

<sup>3</sup> famos.

<sup>4</sup> aus.

<sup>5</sup> No cloud stood.

<sup>6</sup> am.

<sup>7</sup> before the supper.

over a little bridge, we noticed a peasant standing<sup>1</sup> by the way-side. 8. He was playing with a little dog. The dog began to bark when it caught sight of us. 9. "Do not drive too fast," I said, "the dog might<sup>2</sup> jump in front of the automobile and be run over." 10. And sure enough, that is just what happened.<sup>3</sup> 11. Although we were not driving fast, still we had already driven over the dog before we could stop. 12. We expressed our regret, but the peasant said nothing. 13. He looked at the poor dog sadly. 14. He shook his head and heaved a deep sigh. 15. Finally I exclaimed, "Will forty marks cover the damage?" 16. The peasant reflected a moment and answered, "I suppose<sup>4</sup> that will be enough." 17. As soon as we had handed him the money we drove on immediately. 18. "I am sorry that we drove over the poor dog," my friend said. "It was<sup>5</sup> probably a faithful animal." 19. The next day we learned that the dog had not belonged to the peasant at all. 20. It belonged to a rich merchant who was spending a few days in the country. 21. Recently<sup>6</sup> my friend was arrested for driving too fast in his automobile. 22. The policeman took<sup>7</sup> him to the police station. 23. My friend asserted that he was not driving over four kilometers an hour.<sup>8</sup> 24. Nevertheless he had to pay a fine of forty marks. 25. He was highly indignant and said that it was an outrage to treat him so. 26. However that may be, he now drives more slowly.

<sup>1</sup> Infinitive.

<sup>2</sup> Past subjunctive of *fönnen*.

<sup>3</sup> that happened also really.

<sup>4</sup> *wohl*.

<sup>5</sup> Future perfect.

<sup>6</sup> *neulich*.

<sup>7</sup> *bringen*.

<sup>8</sup> the hour.

## LESSON XXVI

**Lernen Sie auswendig:**

1. Er saß ganz hinten in der Ecke. *He sat clear back in the corner.*
2. Ich werde Ihnen dabei behilflich sein. *I will help you do it.*
3. Er griff in die Tasche. *He thrust his hand into his pocket.*
4. Er zog eine Rolle Banknoten hervor. *He pulled out a roll of bills.*

## A

**Ein schlauer Freund**

Vor einigen Jahren befand ich mich auf einem Zuge im fernen Westen, welcher von Räubern überfallen wurde. Als die Räuber, eine Maske vor dem Gesicht, vorn in den Schlafwagen hereinkamen, wurde ich auf zwei Handlungsreisende aufmerksam, die ganz hinten im Wagen einander gegenüber saßen. Sie wurden sehr aufgeregt, als sich die Räuber ihnen näherten. Der eine versuchte sein Geld in seinem Strumpf zu verbergen. Ein Räuber bemerkte es aber und rief: „Bitte, mein Herr, ich werde Ihnen schon behilflich sein, Ihr Geld an einen sicheren Ort zu bringen!“ Da griff der andere Handlungsreisende plötzlich in die Tasche, zog eine Rolle Banknoten hervor und überreichte sie schnell seinem Freunde, indem er mit heiserer Stimme sagte: „Wilhelm, hier sind die zweihundert Taler, die ich dir schulde.“

## B

1. Was passierte einem Zuge im fernen Westen? 2. Was hatten die Räuber vor dem Gesicht? 3. Wer befand sich auf dem Zuge? 4. Wo saßen die Handlungsreisenden? 5. Was versuchte einer der Handlungsreisenden zu tun? 6. Warum gelang es ihm nicht, sein Geld zu verbergen? 7. Was tat der andere

Handlungsreisende? 8. Wem gab er die Banknoten? 9. Wie war seine Stimme? 10. Wie hieß sein Freund? 11. Was sagte er zu seinem Freunde? 12. Erzählen Sie diese Geschichte!

## C

1. Some years ago I was traveling in the Far West. 2. On the train were two drummers. 3. They sat opposite me in the back part of the sleeper. 4. Suddenly the train stopped in the midst of a dark forest. 5. "What's the matter?" exclaimed the passengers. 6. A man with a mask on his face entered the front part of the car. 7. The train was held up by robbers. 8. When the robber approached me I became very excited. 9. I tried to hide my watch in my shoe. 10. But the robber noticed it and said, "Give me your watch and your money." 11. One of the drummers thrust his hand into his pocket and drew forth a roll of bills. 12. Instead of giving<sup>1</sup> it to the robber, he handed it over to his friend. 13. He said, "William, here is the money that I have been owing you for three years."

## D

1. I decided to spend the winter in the Far West. 2. As soon as I arrived at<sup>2</sup> the station I went to<sup>3</sup> the ticket window. 3. "San Francisco, first class,<sup>4</sup> both ways,<sup>5</sup>" I said to the agent. 4. But the round-trip tickets were good<sup>6</sup> for only thirty days, and so I had to take a single-trip ticket. 5. I asked the agent how often I should have to change cars. 6. "It is an express train," he replied. "You will not need to change cars at all." 7. The train left at four o'clock in the afternoon. 8. All aboard for Kansas City, Denver, and

<sup>1</sup> Anstatt . . . zu with the infinitive.

<sup>2</sup> auf.

<sup>3</sup> an.

<sup>4</sup> Genitive.

<sup>5</sup> hin und zurück.

<sup>6</sup> gültig.

San Francisco! <sup>1</sup> 9. I got on a sleeper. 10. Two drummers from <sup>2</sup> Chicago sat opposite me. 11. In Denver many passengers got on and off. 12. I was about to go into the dining car when the train suddenly stopped. 13. "Has the train been held up by robbers?" I asked the conductor. 14. Just as I had finished my question the door was quickly jerked open and a man with a mask on his face stepped into the sleeper. 15. The passengers had to give the robber their money, their watches, and their jewelry. 16. One of the drummers had a big roll of bills which he sadly handed over to the robber. 17. His friend said, "Charles, it is lucky that I paid you back that money this morning that I had been owing you so long." 18. When the robber had gone <sup>3</sup> I got out. 19. The engineer lay unconscious on the rails in front of the engine. 20. The robbers had bound the fireman fast to a telegraph post.

## LESSON XXVII

### Lernen Sie auswendig:

1. Was in aller Welt fehlt dir denn? *What on earth is the matter with you?*
2. Warum siehst du so traurig aus? *Why are you looking so sad?*
3. Er stieß einen tiefen Seufzer aus. *He heaved a deep sigh.*
4. Er bat mich um zwei Mark. *He asked me for two marks.*

## A

### Ein bedauernswerter Mann

Ein alter Junggefell begegnete einmal einem Freund, der sehr traurig und niedergeschlagen aussah. „Was in aller Welt fehlt

<sup>1</sup> Einsteigen in der Richtung Kansas City — Denver — San Francisco!

<sup>2</sup> aus.

<sup>3</sup> fort.

dir denn? Du siehst ja so traurig aus!" sagte der Junggesell zu seinem Freund. „Du würdest auch so aussehen, wenn du solch eine verschwenderische Frau hättest wie ich“, antwortete der Freund. „Na, was hat sie denn getan?“ fragte der Junggesell. Der Freund stieß einen tiefen Seufzer aus und sagte: „Heute morgen hat sie mich um fünfzig Pfennig, gestern um zwei Mark, vorgestern um fünf Mark, und so geht es schon die ganze Woche, daß man rein verzweifeln möchte.“ „Was macht sie denn mit so viel Geld?“ rief der Junggesell. „Ja, das weiß ich eben nicht,“ antwortete der Freund, „denn ich habe ihr noch gar keins gegeben.“

## B

1. Wem begegnete ein alter Junggesell? 2. Wie sah der Freund aus? 3. Was fragte ihn der Junggesell? 4. Warum sah der Freund so traurig aus? 5. Wie oft hat die Frau ihn um Geld? 6. Um wieviel Geld hat sie ihn? 7. Wieviel Geld gab der Freund seiner Frau? 8. Erzählen Sie diese Anekdote!

## C

1. Mr. Smith and Mr. Brown are old friends. 2. The former is an old bachelor; the latter has been married for two or three months. 3. Mr. Smith says that his friend is henpecked. 4. We asked him why he believed that. 5. He heaved a deep sigh and answered, "Because he looks so sad and depressed." 6. But we believe that Mr. Smith is jealous. 7. Yesterday we met Mr. Brown on the street and asked him why he looked so sad. 8. "My wife is so extravagant," he exclaimed, "that I am almost driven to despair."<sup>1</sup> 9. Every time<sup>2</sup> I go home, she asks me for money." 10. We asked

<sup>1</sup> Follow the German model.

<sup>2</sup> Supply wenn.

him what his wife did with so much money. 11. He said he did not know, because he had not given her any yet. 12. She is a woman to be pitied.

## D

1. How much money does he earn? 2. He receives three hundred marks a<sup>1</sup> month. 3. I could not live on<sup>2</sup> that. 4. How can he support his family on it? 5. No wonder that he always looks so sad and depressed. 6. I have heard, too, that his wife is very extravagant. 7. He ought to do<sup>3</sup> as a man did<sup>4</sup> whom I formerly knew. 8. How was that? Tell me about it. 9. This man always looked so sad that I finally asked him what was the matter with him. 10. He complained about his wife, that she was so extravagant. 11. "She asks me for money every day," he exclaimed. 12. I asked him what she did with it. 13. "I cannot answer your question," he said, "for I have never given her any<sup>5</sup> yet." 14. Which<sup>6</sup> of the two<sup>7</sup> is more to be pitied, the husband or the wife? 15. How much money did you spend last month? 16. Unfortunately I spent more than I earned. Living is becoming more expensive every year. 17. We<sup>8</sup> ought not to spend all that we earn. We ought to try to save something each month. 18. Have you heard that Fred Bauer has got a good position? 19. No, I did not know that. What is he doing now? 20. He is a letter carrier and earns a hundred marks a week.

<sup>1</sup> the.<sup>2</sup> von.<sup>3</sup> make it.<sup>4</sup> made it.<sup>5</sup> welches.<sup>6</sup> Neuter.<sup>7</sup> beide.<sup>8</sup> Man.

## LESSON XXVIII

**Lernen Sie auswendig:**

1. Welches von beiden ziehen Sie vor? *Which of the two do you prefer?*
2. Ich kann mich nicht entscheiden, welches ich nehmen soll. *I cannot decide which to take.*
3. Das geht Sie nichts an. *That is none of your business.*

## A

**Der spöttische Kunde**

Ein ärmlich gekleideter Mann ging eines Tages in einen Laden, um sich ein Hemd zu kaufen. Der Verkäufer, ein zu Tode gelangweilter junger Mann, der einen hohen Kragen trug und sehr in seine hochpolierten Nägel vertieft war, brachte zwei Hemden hervor, ein rotes und ein blaues. Der Kunde sah sich dieselben eine Zeitlang an, konnte sich aber nicht entscheiden, welches von beiden er wählen sollte. „Welches finden Sie schöner?“ sagte er endlich zu dem Verkäufer. Dieser gähnte, betrachtete seine Nägel und sagte: „Nun, das kommt gerade auf den Geschmack an.“ „Über welche Farbe würden Sie vorziehen, wenn Sie ein Hemd kaufen?“ fragte der Kunde. „Wenn es mich persönlich angeht,“ antwortete der junge Mann, indem er mit den Fingern auf dem Ladentisch trommelte und wieder gähnte, „so würde ich das blaue vorziehen.“ „Wirklich?“ fragte der Kunde. „Nun gut! Ich nehme das rote, wickeln Sie es rasch ein!“

## B

1. Wohin ging ein ärmlich gekleideter Mann?
2. Was wollte er sich kaufen?
3. Beschreiben Sie den Verkäufer!
4. Wie viele

Hemden brachte er hervor? 5. Konnte sich der Kunde entscheiden, welches Hemd er nehmen sollte? 6. Was sagte er zu dem Verkäufer? 7. Was antwortete dieser? 8. Was fragte ihn der Kunde dann? 9. Welches Hemd zog der Verkäufer vor? 10. Welches kaufte der Kunde? 11. Erzählen Sie die Geschichte!

## C

1. The clerk was standing behind the counter, absorbed in his highly polished finger nails. 2. He yawned and seemed bored to death. 3. He was a young man and wore a very high collar. 4. A shabbily dressed man stepped into the store. 5. The clerk asked him what he wanted. 6. The man said he wanted to buy a shirt. 7. The clerk got out two shirts. 8. One was red, the other blue. 9. After the customer had looked at them for a while, he said, "I cannot decide which one to take." 10. He asked the clerk which one he thought was prettier. 11. The latter beat a tattoo on the counter and said that it depended on taste. 12. But he finally said that he should prefer the blue one. 13. The customer answered, "I have decided to buy the red one." 14. He told the clerk to wrap it up quickly.

## D

1. "Those<sup>1</sup> are pretty shirts," my brother said. 2. We were standing in front of the show window of a large store. 3. "Let's go in and ask what they cost." 4. They were rather expensive, but my brother liked<sup>2</sup> them very much.<sup>3</sup> 5. My brother said he could not spend so much. 6. "If you buy half a<sup>4</sup> dozen, I will take off<sup>5</sup> five marks," the clerk answered. 7. We asked the clerk if he gave credit. 8. He said they sold only for cash. 9. My brother bought half a

<sup>1</sup> Das.      <sup>2</sup> gefallen.      <sup>3</sup> Omit.      <sup>4</sup> a half.      <sup>5</sup> Ihnen ablassen.

dozen shirts and a dozen collars. 10. I bought a pair of<sup>1</sup> kid gloves and a straw hat. 11. While the clerk was wrapping them up, a shabbily dressed man entered. 12. "I should like to have a necktie," he said. 13. The clerk got out several ties, a green one, a red one, a blue one, and a black one. 14. While the customer was looking at the ties, the clerk yawned continually. 15. He looked as if he were bored to death. 16. He took more interest in his highly polished finger nails than in the ties which he was showing the customer. 17. The latter asked him which color he liked best. 18. He said he should prefer the green one if he were personally concerned. 19. "I also like the red one," he added condescendingly. 20. "Wrap me up the blue one and the black one," exclaimed the customer sarcastically.

## LESSON XXIX

### Lernen Sie auswendig:

1. Er hat sich vor kurzem verheiratet. *He got married recently.*
2. Bitte, bedienen Sie sich! *Please help yourself.*
3. Lassen Sie es gut sein! *Never mind.*
4. Mir nichts dir nichts. *Unconcernedly.*

### A

### Der war klug

Ein paar Freunde besuchten einen Zahnarzt, der sich vor kurzem verheiratet hatte. Mitten in einer lebhaften Unterhaltung erinnerte die junge Gattin ihren Mann daran, daß er seinen Freunden noch keine Zigarren angeboten habe. Der Zahnarzt holte eine Kiste Zigarren aus dem Nebenzimmer und reichte sie seinen Gästen

<sup>1</sup> Omit,

mit diesen Worten hin: „Bitte, meine Herren, bedienen Sie sich! Meine Frau hat mir diese zu meinem Geburtstag geschenkt. Sie sind wirklich ausgezeichnet.“ Die Freunde aber bedauerten sehr, daß sie das Rauchen ganz aufgegeben hätten und dadurch dem edlen Kraut nicht die Ehre antun könnten, welches es mit Recht verdiene. Nachdem sich die Freunde verabschiedet hatten, sagte die junge Frau vorwurfsvoll zu ihrem Manne: „Aber Fritz, wie konntest du mir so eine Unwahrheit sagen, daß ich dir die Zigarren geschenkt hätte?“ „Na, Mädchen, laß es gut sein!“ antwortete der Zahnarzt. „Diese Kiste Zigarren hat mir fünfzig Mark gekostet. Sie sind zu teuer, um sie gerade mir nichts dir nichts zu verschenken.“

## B

1. Wer besuchte einen Zahnarzt? 2. Wie hieß der Zahnarzt?
3. War er schon lange verheiratet? 4. Wie hieß seine Frau?
5. Woran erinnerte sie ihren Mann? 6. Wo waren die Zigarren?
7. Wer, sagte der Zahnarzt, habe ihm die Zigarren gegeben?
8. Warum sagten die Freunde, daß sie das Rauchen aufgegeben hätten?
9. Waren es gute oder schlechte Zigarren?
10. Wieviel hatte der Zahnarzt für die Kiste Zigarren bezahlt?
11. Erzählen Sie diese Anekdote!

## C

1. Fred Meyer was a dentist. 2. When he was twenty-four years old he got married. 3. His wife's name was Annie. She was young and beautiful. 4. One evening some friends visited them. 5. In the midst of a lively conversation Mrs. Meyer said, "Fred, you have n't offered the gentlemen any cigars yet." 6. Her husband replied, "Annie, get the box of cigars in the adjoining room." 7. The dentist

told his friends that his wife had given him the box of cigars on his birthday. 8. The gentlemen said, "We regret very much that we have quit smoking, for we know that the cigars are excellent." 9. Their friends left at half past ten. 10. When they had gone the young wife asked her husband how he could ever<sup>1</sup> tell such a story. 11. The dentist replied that the cigars were too expensive to give away unconcernedly.

## D

1. Well, our old friend Hugh Ebers got married<sup>2</sup> last summer. 2. Is<sup>3</sup> that<sup>3</sup> so? Whom did he marry? 3. Miss Anna Schulze, the daughter of a rich brewer in Munich. 4. Where did he become acquainted with her? 5. He met her two years ago when he was visiting his uncle in Cologne. 6. They say that Hugh is an excellent dentist. 7. I can easily believe that,<sup>4</sup> for he was always a diligent student and never wasted his time. 8. When he was a child he always said that he was going to<sup>5</sup> be<sup>6</sup> a soldier. 9. Where does he live now? Have you seen him lately? 10. He lives on Garden street. I visited him and his young wife last week. 11. I found several old acquaintances there and we were soon in the midst of a lively conversation. 12. Suddenly Mrs. Ebers whispered something softly to her husband. 13. "My wife just reminds me that I have n't offered the gentlemen any cigars yet," said Hugh. 14. He went into an adjoining room and soon appeared with a box of cigars in his hand. 15. I was about to take a cigar when he said that his wife had given them to him on his birthday. 16. When I heard that, I said that I had quit smoking. 17. "I regret

<sup>1</sup> nur.<sup>2</sup> Omit.<sup>5</sup> wollen.<sup>2</sup> Perfect.<sup>4</sup> Begin the sentence with Daß.<sup>6</sup> werden.

very much," I said, "that I cannot do the noble weed the honor which it rightly deserves." 18. The young wife looked at her husband reproachfully. We left at half past nine. 19. When we were going home Charles Krause said to me, "Jack, why did you tell such a story? Those<sup>1</sup> were excellent cigars. You ought to have tried one." 20. "What?" I exclaimed. "Why did he say then that his wife had given them to him?"

### LESSON XXX

#### Lernen Sie auswendig:

1. Sie leben noch in den Glitterwochen. *They are not over their honeymoon yet.*
2. Ich wohne im zweiten Stock. *I live in the third story.*
3. Er ließ sich in ein Gespräch mit ihm ein. *He entered into a conversation with him.*
4. Er lief die Treppe hinauf (hinunter). *He ran up (down) the steps.*

#### A

#### Gut weiblich

Ein junges Ehepaar, das noch in den Glitterwochen lebte, kehrte eines Tages von einem Spaziergang nach Hause zurück. Als sie die Haustür erreichten, sagte der Gatte, daß seine Frau nach ihrer Wohnung im zweiten Stock hinaufgehen solle, während er den Hausmann spreche. Seine Frau bat ihn sich zu beeilen, da sie sich so einsam fühle, wenn er nicht bei ihr sei. Der junge Ehemann fand den Hausmann im Hofe und wollte sich eben in ein Gespräch mit ihm einlassen, da hörte er auf einmal seine Frau ihn dringend rufen. Sein erster Gedanke war, daß sich

<sup>1</sup> Das.

vielleicht ein Dieb während ihrer Abwesenheit in ihre Wohnung geschlichen habe. Er ließ den erstaunten Hausmann stehen und kletterte förmlich die Treppen hinauf. Als er ganz erschöpft oben ankam und in das Wohnzimmer stürzte, fand er seine junge Frau gemütlich am Fenster sitzen. „O Karl,“ rief sie, „komm mal schnell ans Fenster! Dort unten geht eine Frau mit einem Hut auf, gerade so wie ich mir schon lange einen wünsche.“

B

1. Was tat ein junges Ehepaar? 2. In welchem Stock wohnten sie? 3. Wen wollte der Gatte sprechen? 4. Was sollte seine Frau tun? 5. Wo fand er den Hausmann? 6. Wie lange sprach er mit dem Hausmann? 7. Woran dachte der junge Ehemann, als seine Frau ihn rief? 8. Was tat er? 9. Wo war seine Frau? 10. Warum hatte sie ihn gerufen? 11. Erzählen Sie die Geschichte!

C

1. A young married couple had returned from a walk. 2. They lived in the third story. 3. When they went in at the front door the husband said, "You go up alone. I must speak to the janitor." 4. "But hurry up," replied his wife. "I feel so lonesome when you are not with me." 5. He started a conversation with the janitor, who was working in the back yard. 6. All at once his wife called urgently, "Charles, come up here quick!" 7. He said to the janitor, "A thief has sneaked into our apartment while we were out." 8. He fairly stormed up the steps and rushed exhausted into the sitting room. 9. His wife said he should come quick to the window and look at a woman who was crossing the street. 10. This woman had on exactly such a hat as she had been wanting for a long time.

## D

1. "Let's take a walk," said Mr. Reinhardt one afternoon to his young wife. 2. They had been married only a short time<sup>1</sup> and were not over their honeymoon yet. 3. "That will be fine," exclaimed his wife. "Let's go at once." 4. Mr. Reinhardt put on his new overcoat, his high hat, and his kid gloves, and told his wife that he was ready. 5. "Wait just<sup>2</sup> a moment," said Mrs. Reinhardt. "I shall be ready immediately." 6. After Mr. Reinhardt had read ten chapters in a new novel, he exclaimed, "Aren't you ready yet, Paula?" 7. His wife was standing in front of a mirror in the bedroom combing<sup>3</sup> her hair. 8. "Please get me my hat, dear," she said. "It is lying on the dresser in the sitting room." 9. Mr. Reinhardt was just beginning the sixteenth chapter when his wife said, "Jack, is my hat on straight<sup>4</sup>? 10. Don't forget to lock the doors and windows." 11. They did not<sup>5</sup> return home until<sup>5</sup> six o'clock. 12. Mrs. Reinhardt told her husband to look for the janitor and tell him that a windowpane in the kitchen was broken. 13. "Shall I wait down here for you or shall I go up alone?" she asked. 14. "You may go up alone," he replied. "I shall be up<sup>6</sup> in a moment." 15. While Mr. Reinhardt was talking with the janitor, he heard his wife call him. 16. "Where are you, Jack? Come here quick." 17. He ran up the steps as fast as he<sup>7</sup> could run, and found his wife in the study standing at the window. 18. "Oh, Jack," she exclaimed, "isn't that a beautiful hat that woman over there has on! If I had one like it,<sup>8</sup> I should be the happiest woman on earth."<sup>9</sup>

<sup>1</sup> erst kurze Zeit.<sup>2</sup> nur.<sup>3</sup> and was combing.<sup>4</sup> sits my hat straight.<sup>5</sup> not . . . until = erst um.<sup>6</sup> nachkommen.<sup>7</sup> so schnell er nur.<sup>8</sup> auch so einen.<sup>9</sup> auf Erden.

## LESSON XXXI

## Lernen Sie auswendig:

1. Die Thür ging auf. *The door opened.*
2. Sie ärgerte sich sehr, daß sie gestört wurde. *She was much vexed at being disturbed.*
3. Heute über acht Tage. *A week from to-day.*  
Heute vor acht Tagen. *A week ago to-day.*
4. Morgen haben wir frei. *To-morrow we have a holiday.*

## A

## Sie wußte es doch

Eine Dame saß in ihrem Wohnzimmer und las in einem neuen Roman. Gerade als sie an eine interessante Stelle kam, wo der Held von Räubern überwältigt wurde, ging die Thür auf, und das Dienstmädchen trat herein. Die Dame ärgerte sich, daß sie gestört wurde, und fragte das Mädchen etwas kurz, was es wünsche. „Bitte, gnädige Frau,“ sagte das Dienstmädchen zögernd, „darf ich heute über acht Tage frei haben?“ Da sie bemerkte, daß ihre Herrin sie mit einem fragenden Blick ansah, fügte sie rasch hinzu: „Ich möchte gern dem Begräbnis meines Bräutigams bewohnen.“ „Was?“ rief die Dame, „dem Begräbnis Ihres Bräutigams bewohnen? Wie wissen Sie denn, daß Ihr Bräutigam in acht Tagen sterben wird? Das Sterben ist etwas, was kein Mensch bestimmen kann.“ „Ja, ja, Sie haben wohl recht, gnädige Frau“, seufzte das Mädchen und blickte sinnend vor sich hin. Dann rief sie plötzlich: „Ich weiß es aber ganz sicher, daß er sterben wird, denn er ist ja verurteilt, heute über acht Tage gehängt zu werden!“

## B

1. Wo saß eine Dame? 2. Was tat sie? 3. Wer machte die Tür auf und trat in das Zimmer? 4. Warum ärgerte sich die Dame, daß sie gestört wurde? 5. Wie redete sie das Dienstmädchen an? 6. Warum wollte das Mädchen einen Tag frei haben? 7. Was sagte die Dame vom Sterben? 8. Gab das Mädchen seiner (ihrer) Herrin recht? 9. Warum glaubte das Mädchen aber, daß sein Bräutigam in acht Tagen sterben werde? 10. Erzählen Sie die Geschichte!

## C

1. A servant girl steps into the sitting room where her mistress sits reading<sup>1</sup> a new novel. 2. The lady is vexed at being disturbed. 3. She has just come to an interesting passage where the hero is being overpowered by robbers. 4. So she asks the girl rather curtly, "Well, what do you want?" 5. The servant hesitates, but finally says that she should like to have a day off the following week.<sup>2</sup> 6. Since her mistress does not answer at once, she quickly adds: "My betrothed is going to die a week from to-day. May I attend his funeral?" 7. The lady thinks that her servant is either crazy or intoxicated. 8. She asserts that no man knows when he is going to die. 9. The girl sighs and says that her mistress is right. 10. But suddenly she exclaims that her betrothed is sentenced to be hanged. 11. "So I know for sure that he is going to die next week," she says triumphantly.

## D

1. Mrs. Nagel sank down with a deep sigh in her comfortable armchair. 2. Her new servant had just broken a plate,

<sup>1</sup> and reads.

<sup>2</sup> in the following week a day free.

a cup, and two saucers. 3. It was the third servant that Mrs. Nagel had had within two weeks. 4. She was a country girl and had never before hired herself out in a large city. 5. "She is such a slow poke too," Mrs. Nagel said to herself. 6. "It makes me actually sick to think of servants." 7. Just<sup>1</sup> then<sup>1</sup> Mrs. Nagel spied a new novel which her husband had bought the day before. 8. She began at once to read in it and soon forgot her worries. 9. The door opened softly and the servant girl stepped timidly into the room. 10. Mrs. Nagel was so absorbed in the novel<sup>2</sup> that she did not notice the girl at all. 11. It was a very interesting story. 12. Mrs. Nagel read on undisturbed, while the girl patiently waited. 13. Just as the hero had slain three robbers and was holding the heroine in close embrace, the servant girl suddenly cleared her throat. 14. With a piercing scream Mrs. Nagel jumped up from her chair and dropped the book on the floor. 15. "For goodness' sake, Johanna," she exclaimed, "do you want to scare me to death? Why do you disturb me?" 16. Johanna blushed and hesitatingly said: "Please, ma'am, may I attend my betrothed's funeral?" 17. As you probably know, he is going to die next Friday." 18. Mrs. Nagel looked at the girl with a questioning look. She was firmly convinced that she had suddenly become crazy. 19. Since her mistress did not answer at once, Johanna said: "The poor fellow is sentenced to be hanged. I should like to see him once more." 20. Mrs. Nagel drew a breath of relief and said that the girl might have the following Friday off.

<sup>1</sup> Da . . . auf einmal.

<sup>2</sup> so very in the novel absorbed.

## LESSON XXXII

**Lernen Sie auswendig:**

1. Er schüttelte den Kopf. *He shook his head.*
2. Er ging die Straße hinunter (hinauf). *He went down (up) the street.*
3. Siehst du! Ich habe es dir doch gesagt! *You see! I told you so!*
4. Das ist aber zu dumm! *That is provoking.*
5. Er ist schon fort. *He has already gone.*

## A

**Der gefällige Bäcker**

Ein Mann ging in eine Bäckerei und fragte den Bäcker, ob er ihm sagen könne, wo die Makkaronifabrik sei. Der Bäcker schüttelte den Kopf, wandte sich an seinen Sohn Hans und fragte diesen, ob er es wisse. Da Hans es auch nicht wußte, verließ der Mann die Bäckerei und ging die Straße hinunter. Nachdem der Mann fort war, sagte der Bäcker: „Hans, weißt du was? Ich glaube wirklich, der Mann meint die Nudelfabrik.“ „Ja, das glaube ich auch“, antwortete Hans. „Springe ihm rasch nach und rufe ihn zurück!“ befahl der Bäcker. Als der Mann zurückkam, sagte der Bäcker zu ihm: „Mein Herr, meinen Sie nicht etwa die Nudelfabrik?“ „Sowohl, die meine ich“, antwortete der Mann. „Wissen Sie, wo die ist?“ „Siehst du, Hans!“ rief der Bäcker freudig. „Ich habe dir doch gesagt, daß er die Nudelfabrik meinte. Weißt du, wo sie ist?“ „Nein, ich weiß es nicht“, antwortete Hans. „Na, das ist aber zu dumm!“ sagte der Bäcker, „denn ich weiß es nämlich auch nicht.“

## B

1. Warum ging ein Mann in eine Bäckerei? 2. Wußte der Bäcker, wo die Makkaronifabrik war? 3. Wie hieß der Sohn des Bäckers? 4. Wohin ging der Mann, nachdem er die Bäckerei verlassen hatte? 5. Was, glaubte der Bäcker, habe der Mann vielleicht gemeint? 6. Was befahl er seinem Sohn? 7. Kam der Mann zurück? 8. War es wirklich die Nudelfabrik, die er meinte? 9. Wußte der Bäcker, wo die war? 10. Hans wußte es, nicht wahr? 11. Erzählen Sie die Anekdote!

## C

1. A baker stood at the window of his bakery and looked out. 2. It had been raining for several hours. 3. A man came up the street and entered the bakery. 4. The baker thought that he wanted to buy some<sup>1</sup> bread. 5. But the man said, "Can you tell me where the macaroni factory is?" 6. Neither the baker nor his son Jack knew where the macaroni factory was. 7. After the man had left the bakery, Jack said perhaps he meant the noodle factory. 8. The baker told his son to run after the man and call him back. 9. "Yes, I mean the noodle factory," said the stranger when he stepped into the bakery again. 10. "Jack, tell the gentleman where the noodle factory is," commanded the baker. 11. Jack said he did not know, whereupon the baker exclaimed that that was provoking, since he did not know either.

## D

1. Mr. Henry Miller is a baker. 2. He has had a bakery on King street for twenty years. 3. He bakes white bread,

<sup>1</sup> Omit.

rye bread, and the best rolls I have ever eaten. 4. White bread is made out of wheat flour. Rye bread is made out of rye flour. 5. Mr. Miller has a son named Jack. 6. He is seventeen years old and helps his father in the bakery. 7. He is also an excellent baker. 8. I buy all my bread from Mr. Miller. 9. He is always very obliging and has, therefore, many customers. 10. Mr. Miller and his son have seen little of the world. 11. They have spent their whole life in their native city and have never ridden<sup>1</sup> on<sup>2</sup> the train. 12. They are worthy people, however, and are general favorites. 13. Yesterday I went to the bakery and said to Mr. Miller, who was standing behind the counter, "Two loaves<sup>3</sup> of<sup>4</sup> bread, please." 14. While he was wrapping up the bread, a stranger stepped into the bakery. 15. He wanted to know where the macaroni factory was, but neither Mr. Miller nor Jack could give him the desired information. 16. The stranger appeared to be in a<sup>4</sup> great hurry. 17. As soon as he had left the bakery, Mr. Miller said, "Jack, did he perhaps mean the noodle factory?" 18. Before Jack could answer, Mr. Miller was already hurrying after the stranger. 19. "Mister!<sup>5</sup> Mister!" he cried. "You mean the noodle factory, don't you?" 20. When the stranger replied to this in the affirmative, Mr. Miller said that there<sup>4</sup> was no noodle factory in the city.

.<sup>1</sup> fahren.

<sup>4</sup> Omit.

<sup>2</sup> mit.

<sup>3</sup> Singular.

<sup>5</sup> Mein Herr!

## LESSON XXXIII

**Lernen Sie auswendig:**

1. Alles ging glatt ab. *Everything passed off smoothly.*
2. Jetzt kommen Sie an die Reihe. *Now it is your turn.*
3. Paß gut auf! *Pay close attention.*
4. Ich bin darüber ordentlich erstaunt. *I am downright astonished at it.*
5. Er wiederholte die Frage. *He repeated the question.*

## A

**Ein geborener Mathematiker**

Der Lehrer einer Volksschule war sehr stolz auf die Fortschritte seiner Schüler. Am Schlusse des Schuljahres lud er die Eltern der Kinder ein, den Prüfungen beizuwohnen. Alles ging glatt ab, bis die Klasse im Rechnen an die Reihe kam. Der Lehrer richtete seine erste Frage an den kleinen Wilhelm, einen besonders klugen Knaben von acht Jahren. „Wilhelm,“ sagte er, „wenn ich dir zwei und dein Vater dir drei Pfennige gäbe, wie viele Pfennige würdest du haben?“ „Sieben“, antwortete sofort der kleine Wilhelm. Der Lehrer errötete heftig über diese unerwartete Antwort. „Du hast mich nicht richtig verstanden“, sagte er zu Wilhelm. „Ich werde dir die Frage wiederholen. Paß gut auf! Wenn ich dir zwei und dein Vater dir drei Pfennige gäbe, wie viele Pfennige würdest du haben?“ „Sieben“, sagte sofort wieder der kleine Wilhelm. „Aber, Wilhelm,“ rief der Lehrer, „ich bin über deine Antwort ordentlich erstaunt! Wie könntest du denn sieben haben?“ „Ich habe doch zwei Pfennige in der Tasche, Herr Lehrer“, sagte der kleine Wilhelm verlegen.

## B

1. Wie alt war Wilhelm? 2. War er klug oder dumm? 3. In welche Schule ging er? 4. Waren die Schüler fleißig oder faul? 5. Was dachte der Lehrer von den Schülern? 6. Was tat der Lehrer am Schlusse des Schuljahres? 7. An wen richtete er seine erste Frage, als die Klasse im Rechnen an die Reihe kam? 8. Was fragte er ihn? 9. Was antwortete Wilhelm darauf? 10. Was glaubte der Lehrer? 11. Was tat er? 12. Was antwortete Wilhelm diesmal? 13. Was sagte der Lehrer zu ihm? 14. Was sagte Wilhelm? 15. Erzählen Sie die Geschichte!

## C

1. Little William is a bright boy. 2. He is eight years old and goes to the public school. 3. His parents are very proud of him and his teacher says that he is a born mathematician. 4. Last year the pupils made such progress that the teacher invited the parents of the children to be present at the examinations at the close of the school year. 5. At first everything passed off smoothly and the parents praised the teacher highly.<sup>1</sup> 6. Finally came the turn of the class in arithmetic. 7. The teacher asked William how many pennies he should have if his father gave him three and his mother two. 8. William at once answered that he should have seven. 9. The teacher was astonished at this unexpected answer and William's mother blushed furiously. 10. The teacher said William should pay close attention, and then he repeated the question. 11. Once more William answered, "Seven," whereupon the teacher said he had misunderstood the question. 12. But William replied in an embarrassed manner that he had two pennies in his pocket.

<sup>1</sup> sehr.

## D

1. Little Fred was eight years old on the second of February. 2. His mother thought that he was an unusually smart child. 3. Every time<sup>1</sup> she met Fred's teacher, the latter would say,<sup>2</sup> "Fred is certainly<sup>3</sup> a born mathematician." 4. One day toward the close of the school year the teacher said to her, "I should be very glad, Mrs. Hoffmann, if you could be present at the examinations next Friday." 5. Mrs. Hoffmann thanked<sup>4</sup> him<sup>5</sup> and said that she would come. 6. On Friday little Fred had to put on his Sunday clothes and his mother accompanied him to school. 7. Every time<sup>1</sup> Fred's turn came, he answered correctly the questions which the teacher put to him. 8. His mother smiled and said to her neighbor, "I am very well<sup>5</sup> pleased with the progress Freddie is making." 9. Finally the teacher said, "Fred, if I gave you ten pennies and you gave your mother half<sup>6</sup> of them, how many should you still have left?" 10. Fred said he should still have eight left. 11. "Go to the board, Fred," the teacher commanded. "Write on<sup>7</sup> it:  $10 - 5 = 5$ ." 12. Fred did so.<sup>8</sup> Then the teacher said, "Take the eraser and erase it." 13. The teacher repeated the question for the<sup>9</sup> second time. 14. Once more little Fred answered, "Eight." 15. The teacher was so astonished that he could not utter a word. 16. Fred's mother turned pale and was on the verge of crying. 17. Fred became very much<sup>5</sup> embarrassed. He did not know what to do.<sup>10</sup> 18. "Teacher,"<sup>11</sup> he said finally, "my father gave me three pennies this morning. 19. I have not spent them yet. I still have them in my pocket."

<sup>1</sup> Every time when.

<sup>4</sup> sich bedanken.

<sup>7</sup> an.

<sup>10</sup> what he should do.

<sup>2</sup> Past indicative.

<sup>5</sup> Omit.

<sup>8</sup> es.

<sup>11</sup> Bitte, Herr Lehrer.

<sup>3</sup> wirklich.

<sup>6</sup> the half.

<sup>9</sup> zum.

## LESSON XXXIV

**Lernen Sie auswendig:**

1. Er ist erst zehn Jahre alt. *He is only ten years old.*
2. Das können Sie mir nicht weismachen. *You cannot make me believe that.*
3. Ich bin fest davon überzeugt. *I am firmly convinced of it.*
4. Es ist die reine Unmöglichkeit. *It is an absolute impossibility.*

## A

**Unmöglich**

Ein berühmter Künstler machte eines Nachmittags mit einem Freunde einen Spaziergang nach dem Tiergarten. Ihr Weg führte sie durch eine ärmliche Nachbarschaft. Da bemerkten sie einen sehr schmutzigen kleinen Knaben einsam auf einer sehr schmutzigen Treppe sitzen. Der Künstler blieb vor dem kleinen Schmutzfinf stehen, sah ihn einen Augenblick gedankenvoll an und sagte: „Wie alt bist du, mein Sohn?“ „Sechs Jahre“, erwiderte der Kleine. „Bist du denn nicht viel älter als sechs Jahre?“ fragte der Künstler. „Nein, ich bin erst sechs“, sagte der Knabe. „Weißt du das auch sicher?“ fuhr der Künstler fort. „Nein, ich werde doch wohl wissen, wie alt ich bin!“ sagte der Knabe gereizt. „Das kannst du mir nicht weismachen, du bist doch viel älter!“ behauptete der Künstler, indem er sich entfernte. Die beiden Männer gingen eine Strecke schweigend nebeneinander her, da sagte der Freund, der bis jetzt noch kein Wort geäußert hatte: „Glaubst du denn wirklich, daß er älter ist?“ „Ja, ich bin fest davon überzeugt“, erwiderte der Künstler, „denn es ist die reine Unmöglichkeit, daß ein Mensch binnen sechs Jahren so schmutzig werden kann.“

## B

1. Wohin machte ein Künstler einen Spaziergang? 2. War er allein? 3. Wohin führte sie der Weg? 4. Wen bemerkten sie auf einer schmutzigen Treppe sitzen? 5. Was fragte ihn der Künstler? 6. Was erwiderte der Kleine? 7. Glaubte der Künstler, was der Knabe sagte? 8. Wußte der Knabe ganz sicher, daß er erst sechs war? 9. Warum glaubte der Künstler, daß er älter sei? 10. Wem sagte der Künstler das? 11. Erzählen Sie die Anekdote!

## C

1. In a poor neighborhood of a large city a dirty little boy was sitting one afternoon upon a very dirty flight of steps. 2. Two men who were returning home from a walk in the zoölogical garden passed by the little boy. 3. One of the men was a famous artist, the other a well-known physician. 4. The artist asked the dirty youngster how old he was. 5. The latter said he was six years old. 6. The artist asked him whether he was not older than six. 7. But the boy, very much<sup>1</sup> irritated, maintained that he was only six. 8. "Don't tell me a fib!"<sup>2</sup> said the artist. "I know you are much older." 9. During this conversation the physician did not utter a word. 10. But when they were going away he asked his friend if he really believed that the child was older. 11. The artist replied that he was firmly convinced of it because nobody could get so dirty within six years.

## D

1. In a poor neighborhood of the city of<sup>1</sup> B. lives a little boy named William Schneider. 2. He is only five years old.

<sup>1</sup> Omit.

<sup>2</sup> Mach' mir nichts weis!

3. His parents are honest people, but very poor. 4. His father is a day laborer. His mother is a washerwoman. 5. Mrs. Schneider has much to do and cannot pay close attention to her son. 6. She is often away the whole day and little William must stay at home alone. 7. William has no toys. He has no drum, no rocking horse, no top, no building blocks. 8. Last Christmas he had a little Christmas tree. 9. But Santa Claus did not bring him any presents. 10. His parents had hardly enough money to pay the rent. 11. Since William has no toys, he plays in<sup>1</sup> the street when his mother is away. 12. Of course he gets very dirty, but then how can he help it? 13. On warm days when the sun shines bright he sits for hours on the front steps. 14. When he was sitting on the steps one day, two gentlemen passed by. 15. One of them<sup>2</sup> wore a full beard, the other only a mustache. 16. The latter said to William, "My son, you are fifteen years old, are n't you?" 17. When William said that he was only five years old the gentleman looked at him astonished. 18. He said to his friend, "Do you believe that one can get so dirty within five years?" 19. The friend said that it was an absolute impossibility. 20. After the gentlemen had gone,<sup>3</sup> William looked for a piece of<sup>4</sup> soap to wash his face and hands,<sup>5</sup> for he was ashamed for the<sup>6</sup> first time in his life that he was so dirty.

<sup>1</sup> auf.

<sup>2</sup> Der eine.

<sup>3</sup> fort waren.

<sup>4</sup> Omit.

<sup>5</sup> sich Gesicht und Hände.

<sup>6</sup> zum.

## LESSON XXXV

**Lernen Sie auswendig:**

1. Durch Erfahrung wird man klug. *Experience is the best teacher.*
2. Er konnte auf die Fragen des Arztes kaum Antwort geben. *He could scarcely answer the physician's questions.*
3. Er leidet schon mehrere Tage daran. *He has been suffering with it for several days.*
4. Essen Sie tüchtig davon! *Eat heartily of it.*

## A

**Durch Erfahrung wird man klug**

In einem kleinen Dorfe nahe bei G. wurde ein junger Arzt zu einem schwerkranken Schuster gerufen. Als er bei dem Schuster ankam, fand er diesen so schwach, daß er auf seine Fragen kaum Antwort geben konnte. Die Frau des Schusters sagte, daß ihr Mann schon mehrere Tage am Magen leide. Der junge Arzt betrachtete den Kranken eine Zeitlang, dann sagte er ganz leise zu der Frau: „Kochen Sie Ihrem Manne Sauerkraut, Schweinefleisch und Kartoffelbrei, und lassen Sie ihn tüchtig davon essen! Morgen früh werde ich nachsehen, wie es ihm geht.“ Als er am nächsten Tage bei dem Schuster vorsprach, fand er denselben zu seiner großen Überraschung wieder kerngesund bei der Arbeit. Ein paar Tage später schickte ein Schneider, der plötzlich krank geworden war, nach dem jungen Arzt. Dieser verschrieb ihm dasselbe, was er dem Schuster verordnet hatte. Am Abend, als er noch einmal nach seinem Patienten sehen wollte, fand er den armen Mann als Leiche daliegen. Sehr betrübt nahm der junge

Arzt sein Notizbuch aus der Tasche und schrieb hinein: „Sauerkraut, Schweinefleisch und Kartoffelbrei ist gut für einen Schuster, aber nicht für einen Schneider.“

## B

1. Wie heißt diese Geschichte? 2. Zu wem wurde ein junger Arzt gerufen? 3. Warum konnte der Schuster auf die Fragen des Arztes kaum Antwort geben? 4. Woran litt der Schuster? 5. Wie lange litt er schon daran? 6. Was verschrieb der Arzt dem Schuster? 7. Wieviel sollte der Schuster davon essen? 8. Wo fand der Arzt den Schuster am nächsten Tage? 9. Zu wem wurde der Arzt ein paar Tage später gerufen? 10. Was verschrieb er dem Schneider? 11. Wurde der Schneider bald wieder gesund? 12. Was schrieb der junge Arzt in sein Notizbuch? 13. Erzählen Sie die Geschichte!

## C

1. A cobbler suddenly became sick and sent for a young physician who had recently arrived in the village. 2. The cobbler could hardly answer the physician's questions because he was so weak. 3. The doctor told the cobbler's wife to cook her husband some<sup>1</sup> sauerkraut, pork, and mashed potatoes. 4. "Your husband must eat heartily of these," he said. "The<sup>2</sup> more he eats of them, the<sup>2</sup> better." 5. The next day the cobbler was at his work again hale and hearty. 6. Two or three weeks later the physician was called to a very sick tailor. 7. The tailor's wife said, "My husband has been suffering for several weeks with his stomach." 8. "So!" the doctor thought to<sup>3</sup> himself, "stomach trouble! Well, I shall prescribe for him the same thing that I ordered for the

<sup>1</sup> Omit.<sup>2</sup> The . . . the = Je . . . desto.<sup>3</sup> bei.

cobbler." 9. "To-morrow your husband will be well again," he said to the tailor's wife when he went away. 10. But to his great surprise the tailor died that very evening.<sup>1</sup> 11. "Experience is the best teacher," said the young physician sadly as he wrote in his notebook, "What's good for a cobbler is not always good for a tailor."

## D

1. Last year a young physician whom I know moved to the little town of<sup>2</sup> X. 2. Shortly after his arrival a blacksmith, who lived just opposite him, became suddenly sick. 3. He was a large, strong man, who had never been sick before in his life. 4. He told his wife to send for the young physician. 5. The doctor asked<sup>3</sup> him the usual questions. 6. He answered them as well as he could. 7. His wife said that he had had no appetite in the last few<sup>4</sup> days. 8. The doctor regarded the sick man for a while and then shook his head critically. 9. He led the wife aside and spoke to her in a low tone. 10. "Your husband has a weak stomach," he said. "Cook him some pancakes and apple sauce. 11. Let him eat as much of these as he wants to." 12. The next day he went to the house of the blacksmith in order to see how he was getting along. 13. The smith's wife opened the door and said, "My husband is already at work again." 14. "That's fine," said the young physician. "I am very glad of that." 15. When he went to<sup>5</sup> the post office he had to pass by the blacksmith shop. 16. The blacksmith saw him and came running out<sup>6</sup> joyously. 17. "I have shod five horses this morning and am not at all tired," he

<sup>1</sup> noch am selben Abend.<sup>2</sup> Omit.<sup>3</sup> stellen.<sup>4</sup> paar.<sup>5</sup> auf.<sup>6</sup> Perfect participle.

exclaimed, shaking<sup>1</sup> the doctor's hand<sup>2</sup> vigorously. 18. A few days later the young physician prescribed for a sick carpenter the same thing that he had ordered for the blacksmith. 19. But the carpenter died suddenly after he had eaten heartily of the pancakes and apple sauce. 20. The young physician wrote in his notebook: "Not all stomachs are alike. The stomach of a sick carpenter is entirely different from the stomach of a sick blacksmith."

## LESSON XXXVI

### Lernen Sie auswendig:

1. Ich freue mich sehr darauf. *I am looking forward to it with much pleasure.*
2. Wenn nichts dazwischenkommt. *If nothing interferes.*
3. Darauf muß ich leider verzichten. *I shall have to give that up, I am sorry to say.*
4. Mein Geld ist alle. *My money is all gone.*

## A

### Ein Brief

St. Louis, den 18. Dezember 1912.

Lieber Vater!

Heute über acht Tage ist Weihnachten, und ich freue mich sehr darauf, Euch alle wiederzusehen. Mittwoch um ein Uhr haben wir den letzten Klassenunterricht, und ich gedenke noch am selben Nachmittag mit dem Schnellzug abzufahren. Wenn nichts dazwischenkommt, werde ich also um sieben Uhr abends bei Euch sein. Bitte, sage Mutter, sie soll mir ja ein gutes Abendessen

<sup>1</sup> Use a clause with *indem*.

<sup>2</sup> to the doctor the hand.

zubereiten, denn ich bringe wie immer einen gesunden Appetit mit. Und Schwester Ida soll nicht vergessen, mir eine ganze Menge Kuchen zu backen.

Gestern abend besuchte ich das deutsche Theater. Wilhelm Tell wurde aufgeführt. Es hat mich doppelt interessiert, da wir gerade jetzt dieses Meisterstück Schillers in der Klasse lesen. Übermorgen wird Lessings Minna von Barnhelm gegeben, welches ich auch gern sehen möchte. Darauf muß ich aber leider verzichten, denn mein Geld ist alle, und ich muß Dich noch einmal um einen Scheck bitten, lieber Vater, ehe ich nach Hause kommen kann.

Auf ein fröhliches Wiedersehen verbleibe ich mit herzlichsten Grüßen an Euch alle

Dein Dich liebender Sohn

Karl.

## B

In dating a letter the accusative is used: d. 18. Dez. 1912 = den achtzehnten Dezember 1912.

A comma is not used to separate the month from the year.

Commence the salutation of a letter well towards the center of the sheet and punctuate with an exclamation point.

Do not begin the opening sentence with Ich.

In letters the familiar pronouns of address, du, dein, ihr, euer, as well as the polite forms Sie, Ihr, are written with capitals.

For addressing envelopes compare the following models :

[An]

Herrn Prof. Dr. Thomas Herzog

Leipzig

Wettiner Str. 14<sup>II</sup>

[An]

Herrn Heinrich Schmidt

Hier

Ludwigstr. 24

An may be omitted. 14<sup>11</sup> = house number 14, up two flights of stairs. Give all the titles of the person addressed.

C

Chicago, May 28, 1913

Dear Mother,

The examinations are at last over. I passed in everything,<sup>1</sup> but Charles, I am sorry to say, failed<sup>2</sup> in mathematics. He was not feeling well that day and so could not do his best.

If nothing interferes, I shall be with you Thursday for supper, that is, if father will send<sup>3</sup> me another check. My money fairly flies, I don't know what becomes of it.<sup>4</sup> Please tell father to send me fifty dollars, otherwise I shall not be able to pay my landlady. Charles would like to spend a few days in the country with his friend, Henry Brown, before he comes home.

The other day I got a letter from Uncle Jack in which he informed me that he should spend the summer in the mountains, and he urged me to accompany him. I hope father will give his consent to it and let me go along.

It is late and, since I am tired, I will close. With love<sup>5</sup> to you all, I remain as ever

Your loving son

William

<sup>1</sup> I have passed them all.<sup>4</sup> *wohin es geht*.<sup>2</sup> Perfect tense.<sup>3</sup> Present tense.<sup>5</sup> Follow the German model.

## LESSON XXXVII

## Lernen Sie auswendig:

1. Er hielt eine Vorlesung über Schiller. *He gave a lecture on Schiller.*
2. Sie müssen Ihren Aufenthalt bei uns nehmen. *You must stay with us.*
3. Ich bin schon anderwärts versagt. *I already have another engagement.*
4. Können Sie mir bis Sonntag mitteilen, ob . . . ? *Can you let me know by Sunday whether . . . ?*

## A

## Briefe

Chicago, den 10. Februar 1913.

Lieber Herr Doktor!

Professor Müller teilte mir soeben mit, daß Sie nächste Woche dem Deutschen Verein eine Vorlesung über Schiller halten werden, und daß Sie gedenken, möglicherweise ein paar Tage in unserer Stadt zu verbringen. Wenn Sie nicht schon anderwärts versagt sind, so erwarten wir ganz sicher, daß Sie Ihren Aufenthalt bei uns nehmen. Es würde uns sehr freuen, wenn Ihre Frau Gemahlin auch mitkäme. Können Sie mir bis Sonntag mitteilen, ob wir Sie beide erwarten dürfen? Wir möchten auch gern wissen, mit welchem Zuge Sie ankommen werden. Mit den herzlichsten Grüßen von meiner Frau und mir an Sie und Ihre Frau Gemahlin verbleibe ich

Ihr stets ergebener

Heinrich Hoffmann.

Leipzig, den 6. März 1913.

Sehr geehrter Herr!

Wir bedauern sehr, daß wir die von Ihnen bestellten Füllfedern nicht sofort an Sie abschießen können, da wir augenblicklich ganz und gar ausverkauft haben. Wir erwarten aber täglich eine neue Sendung von der Fabrik, und sowie sie ankommen, werden wir Ihrer Bestellung die erste Aufmerksamkeit schenken. Indem wir hoffen, daß dies Ihren Beifall findet, zeichnen wir, Ihren ferneren geschätzten Aufträgen gern entgegensehend,

Hochachtungsvoll

Müller & Braun.

B

In the salutation of more formal letters do not use *lieb*, but some such expression as *Sehr geehrter Herr!* *Sehr geehrte Frau!* *Sehr geehrte gnädige Frau!* *Verehrter Herr* *Professor!*

These expressions are generally omitted in business letters if the name and residence of the person addressed are inserted. Cf. the business letter below.

Some formulas for closing are *Ihr stets getreuer*, *Ihr aufrichtiger*, *Ihr ergebener*, *Ihr ganz ergebener*, *Ihr stets ergebener*, *Achtungsvoll*, *Hochachtungsvoll*, etc. In the first five of these phrases feminine endings are used if the writer is a woman, as *Ihre ergebene*.

Note the following expressions: "An answer is requested" = *U. A. w. g.* = *Um Antwort wird gebeten*; "Postscript" = *Postskriptum* (P.S.) or *Nachschrift* (N.S.); "in care of" (on envelopes) = *bei*, "in care of Dr. Smith" = *bei Herrn Doktor Schmidt*; "Forward" = *Nachsenden!* or *Nachschicken!* "General Delivery" = *Postlagernd*; "Confidential" = *Persönlich*.

## C

New York, June 10, 1913

Dear Professor Smith,<sup>1</sup>

A day or two ago I heard of a very good position at the University of Texas, and I have decided to apply for it.<sup>2</sup> Might I ask you to write a letter of recommendation for<sup>3</sup> me<sup>3</sup> to the president and also one to Professor Meyer? I shall appreciate your kindness in this matter<sup>4</sup> very much. If I have the good fortune to obtain the position, I shall leave at once for Germany to become more closely acquainted with the life and customs of the German people. With best regards<sup>5</sup> I remain

Sincerely yours<sup>5</sup>

Joseph Fisher

Montgomery, Ala., June 16, 1913

Mr.<sup>6</sup> Joseph Schneider

Leipzig

Dear<sup>7</sup> Sir,<sup>7</sup>

In my letter of the 14th inst. I ordered two copies of Vietor's<sup>8</sup> "Elemente der Phonetik." What I really should have ordered is Vietor's "Kleine Phonetik." If you have Scherer's "Geschichte der deutschen Literatur" in stock, second-hand,<sup>9</sup> please send me two copies of it.

Very truly yours<sup>5</sup>

Ernest Wolf

<sup>1</sup> Lieber Herr Professor!<sup>2</sup> darum.<sup>3</sup> mir.<sup>4</sup> Ihre freundlichen Bemühungen.<sup>5</sup> Follow the German model.<sup>6</sup> Herrn.<sup>7</sup> Omit.<sup>8</sup> No apostrophe in German.<sup>9</sup> second-hand in stock.

## LESSON XXXVIII

**Lernen Sie auswendig:**

1. Deutschland ist ungefähr ein Fünfzehntel so groß wie die Vereinigten Staaten ohne Alaska. *Germany is about one fifteenth as large as the United States without Alaska.*

2. Das Deutsche Reich wurde im Jahre 1871 gegründet. *The German Empire was established in 1871.*

3. Die Kaiserwürde ist erblich. *The imperial dignity is hereditary.*

4. Wilhelm II. ist der jetzige Kaiser. Er regiert seit 1888. *William II is the present emperor. He has been reigning since 1888.*

## A

**Deutschland**

Deutschland ist ein Kaiserreich und ist etwas kleiner als der Staat Texas, oder ungefähr ein Fünfzehntel so groß wie die Vereinigten Staaten ohne Alaska. Obgleich es ein verhältnismäßig kleines Land ist, hatte es doch im Jahre 1910 64 903 423 Einwohner. Berlin ist die Hauptstadt und auch zugleich die größte Stadt des Reiches. Andere große und bedeutende Städte sind Hamburg, München, Leipzig, Dresden, Köln usw.

Das Deutsche Reich wurde im Jahre 1871 gegen den Schluß des Deutsch-Französischen Krieges gegründet. Es besteht aus sechsundzwanzig Staaten. Die einzelnen Staaten haben ihre eigenen Regierungen, aber an der Spitze von allen steht der Deutsche Kaiser, dem die Oberleitung der militärischen und politischen Angelegenheiten des Reiches anvertraut ist. Die Kaiserwürde ist erblich und wird dem König von Preußen zuteil. Die Reichsregierung wird von dem Kaiser, von dem Bundesrat und von dem Reichstag

ausgeübt. Die Mitglieder des Bundesrates werden von den Regierungen der verschiedenen Staaten ernannt. Die Mitglieder des Reichstags werden gewählt. Bürger, die über fünfundzwanzig Jahre alt sind, haben das Stimmrecht.

Wilhelm II. ist der jetzige Kaiser. Er wurde im Jahre 1859 geboren und regiert seit 1888. Er hat sechs Söhne und eine Tochter. Der älteste Sohn ist der Kronprinz Friedrich Wilhelm, der 1882 geboren wurde. Die deutsche Kaiserin heißt Augusta Viktoria.

## B

1. Wie groß ist Deutschland? 2. Wie viele Einwohner hat es?
3. Wie heißt die Hauptstadt? 4. Nennen Sie andere große Städte Deutschlands!
5. Wann wurde das Deutsche Reich gegründet?
6. Woraus besteht es? 7. Wird der Deutsche Kaiser gewählt?
8. Von wem wird die Regierung des Reiches ausgeübt? 9. Von wem werden die Mitglieder des Bundesrates ernannt?
10. Werden die Mitglieder des Reichstags auch auf diese Weise ernannt?
11. Wer hat das Stimmrecht? 12. Wie heißt der jetzige Kaiser?
13. Wann wurde er geboren? 14. Wie lange regiert er schon?
15. Wie viele Kinder hat er? 16. Wie heißt der Kronprinz?
17. Wann wurde der Kronprinz geboren? 18. Wie heißt die Kaiserin?

## C

1. The German Empire has existed since 1871. 2. The present emperor is William II. He has been reigning since 1888.
3. His father, Frederick III, lived only ninety-nine days after he had mounted the throne. 4. His grandfather, William I, was the first emperor of the present empire. 5. He was proclaimed emperor<sup>1</sup> in the palace of the French kings

<sup>1</sup> zum Kaiser.

at Versailles toward the close of the Franco-Prussian war. 6. The imperial dignity is hereditary. In the old empire the emperors were elected. 7. The old empire was called the Holy Roman Empire.<sup>1</sup> 8. The German emperor is also at the same time<sup>2</sup> king of Prussia. 9. Prussia is the largest among the twenty-six states that constitute the German Empire. 10. Besides Prussia there are three other kingdoms, Bavaria, Saxony, and Württemberg. 11. The remaining states consist of grand duchies, duchies, principalities, and free cities. 12. The three free cities are Hamburg, Bremen, and Lübeck. 13. The colors of the German flag are black, white, and red.<sup>3</sup> 14. The Germans have three national songs: "Heil dir im Siegerkranz," "Die Wacht am Rhein," and "Deutschland über alles." 15. "Heil dir im Siegerkranz" has the same melody as the national anthems of America and England, "My Country, 't is of Thee" and "God save the King."

<sup>1</sup> das Heilige Römische Reich Deutscher Nation.

<sup>2</sup> zu gleicher Zeit.

<sup>3</sup> schwarzweißrot.

# VOCABULARIES

## EXPLANATIONS

Strong and irregular verbs are marked with an asterisk (\*). For their principal parts consult the list of strong and irregular verbs at the back of this book. Separable compound verbs are indicated by a vertical line between the prefix and the rest of the verb (auf<sup>|</sup>hören). Inseparable compound verbs are written as one word (verstehen). Verbs that take *sein* in the perfect tenses are indicated by (*sein*); the others take *haben*.

The definite article is given with the nominative singular form of the noun. The nominative plural of all nouns having a plural is indicated: *das Jēnſter* ( ) denotes a neuter noun, nominative plural = *Jēnſter*; *der Bruder* (") denotes a masculine noun, nominative plural = *Brüder*; *der Sohn* ("e) indicates a masculine noun, nominative plural = *Söhne*. The genitive singular of masculine and neuter nouns is to be understood as ending in *-(e)s*, unless otherwise indicated, as *der Knabe* (-n, -n) = *der Knabe, deſ Knaben, die Knaben*.

The declension of personal and interrogative pronouns is given: *er* (*seiner, ihm, ihn*) represent the nominative, genitive, dative, and accusative singular respectively.

The nominative forms of the *dieſer*-words and the *ſein*-words are noted: *dieſer* (*dieſe, dieſeſ; dieſe*) = nominative singular masculine *dieſer*, feminine *dieſe*, neuter *dieſeſ*, plural for all genders *dieſe*.

The comparative and superlative forms of adjectives are indicated whenever they show umlaut of the stem vowel or are irregular: *alt* ("er, "elt) = positive *alt*, comparative *älter*, superlative *älteſt*.

Since the uninflected form of the German adjective may also be used as an adverb, the latter is not, as a rule, listed separately.

Letters, parts of words, or words inclosed in square brackets [ ] may be omitted.

## ABBREVIATIONS

|                |               |                  |               |                 |               |
|----------------|---------------|------------------|---------------|-----------------|---------------|
| <i>abbrev.</i> | abbreviation  | <i>impers.</i>   | impersonal    | <i>pluperf.</i> | pluperfect    |
| <i>acc.</i>    | accusative    | <i>indecl.</i>   | indeclinable  | <i>poss.</i>    | possessive    |
| <i>adj.</i>    | adjective     | <i>indef.</i>    | indefinite    | <i>pred.</i>    | predicate     |
| <i>adv.</i>    | adverb        | <i>infin.</i>    | infinitive    | <i>pref.</i>    | prefix        |
| <i>art.</i>    | article       | <i>infl.</i>     | inflection    | <i>prep.</i>    | preposition   |
| <i>aux.</i>    | auxiliary     | <i>insep.</i>    | inseparable   | <i>pres.</i>    | present       |
| <i>card.</i>   | cardinal      | <i>interj.</i>   | interjection  | <i>pron.</i>    | pronoun       |
| <i>compar.</i> | comparative   | <i>interrog.</i> | interrogative | <i>recip.</i>   | reciprocal    |
| <i>conj.</i>   | conjunction   | <i>intr.</i>     | intransitive  | <i>refl.</i>    | reflexive     |
| <i>contr.</i>  | contraction   | <i>masc.</i>     | masculine     | <i>rel.</i>     | relative      |
| <i>coörd.</i>  | coördinating  | <i>mod.</i>      | modal         | <i>sep.</i>     | separable     |
| <i>dat.</i>    | dative        | <i>neut.</i>     | neuter        | <i>sg.</i>      | singular      |
| <i>def.</i>    | definite      | <i>num.</i>      | numeral       | <i>subj.</i>    | subjunctive   |
| <i>dem.</i>    | demonstrative | <i>ord.</i>      | ordinal       | <i>subord.</i>  | subordinating |
| <i>emphat.</i> | emphatic      | <i>part.</i>     | participial   | <i>superl.</i>  | superlative   |
| <i>fem.</i>    | feminine      | <i>perf.</i>     | perfect       | <i>tr.</i>      | transitive    |
| <i>fut.</i>    | future        | <i>pers.</i>     | personal      | <i>w.</i>       | with          |
| <i>gen.</i>    | genitive      | <i>pl.</i>       | plural        |                 |               |

## GERMAN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY

**ab** *adv. or sep. pref.* off, away, down  
 der **Abend** (-e) evening  
 das **Abendessen** (-) supper  
**a'ber** *coörd. conj.* but, however  
**ab'fahren\*** *intr.* (sein) drive off, start, leave  
**ab'gehen\*** *intr.* (sein) go off, pass off  
**ab'nehmen\*** *tr.* take off  
**ab'schicken** *tr.* send off, forward, ship  
 die **Abwesenheit** (-en) absence  
**ach** *interj.* ah, oh  
**acht** *card. num.* eight; *ord. num.* eighth  
**achtungsvoll** *adj.* respectful  
**all** *indef. pron. or adj.* all, every; alles everything; mein Geld ist alle my money is all gone  
**allein'** *adj.* alone; *coörd. conj.* but  
**als** *subord. conj.* when; *after compar.* than; *after negative* but, except  
**al'so** *adv.* so, thus, then, therefore  
**alt** ("er, "est) *adj.* old  
**al'tern** *intr.* (sein or haben) grow old  
**am** *contr. of an dem*  
**an** *prep.* (dat. or acc.) or *adv. or sep. pref.* at, by, on, to  
**an'bellen** *tr.* bark at  
**an'bieten\*** *tr.* offer  
**an'der** *indef. pron. or adj.* other, different; anders *adv.* differently; wo anders elsewhere  
**an'derwärts** *adv.* elsewhere  
 die **Anekdote** (-n) anecdote

**an'fangen\*** *tr. or intr.* begin, do  
**an'gehen\*** *tr.* concern  
 die **An'gelegenheit** (-en) affair  
 die **Angst** ("e) anxiety; Angst haben\* be afraid  
**an'halten\*** *intr.* stop  
**an'herrschen** *tr.* address in an overbearing tone  
**an'kommen\*** *intr.* (sein) arrive; *impers. w. auf (acc.)* depend on  
 das **Ann'chen** Annie  
**an'reden** *tr.* speak to, address  
**ans** *contr. of an das*  
**an'sehen\*** *tr.* look at  
 die **An'stalt** (-en) preparation  
**anstatt'** *prep.* (gen.) instead of  
**an'tun\*** *tr.* do to  
 die **Ant'wort** (-en) answer  
**ant'worten** *tr. or intr.* (dat. of person, auf w. acc. of thing) answer  
**an'vertrauen** *tr.* intrust  
**an'ziehen\*** *tr.* draw on, put on; *refl.* dress  
**an'zünden** *tr.* light, ignite  
 der **Ap'fel** (") apple  
 der **Appetit'** (-e) appetite  
 der **April'** (-e) April  
 die **Ar'beit** (-en) work  
**ar'beiten** *intr.* work  
**är'gern** *tr.* vex; *refl. w. über (acc.)* be vexed at  
**arm** ("er, "st) *adj.* poor  
**ärm'lich** *adj.* poor, shabby

der Arzt (<sup>u</sup>e) physician  
 das Asch'enbrödel Cinderella  
 auch *adv.* also; auch nicht not . . .  
     either  
 auf *prep.* (*dat. or acc.*) *or adv. or sep. pref.* on, upon, up; auf und nieder  
     up and down  
 der Auf'enthalt (-e) stay, sojourn  
 auf'führen *tr.* act, perform, play  
 die Auf'gabe (-n) task, exercise,  
     lesson  
 auf'geben\* *tr.* give up  
 auf'gehen\* *intr.* (*sein*) open  
 auf'hören *intr.* stop, cease  
 auf'machen *tr.* open  
 auf'merk'fam *adj.* attentive; ich wurde  
     auf (*acc.*) . . . auf'merk'fam my at-  
     tention was drawn to  
 die Auf'merk'samkeit (-en) attention  
 auf'passen *intr.* pay attention  
 auf'regen *tr.* stir up, excite  
 auf'richtig *adj.* sincere  
 auf'setzen *tr.* put on  
 auf'stehen\* *intr.* (*sein*) stand up,  
     get up, rise  
 der Auf'trag (<sup>u</sup>e) commission, order  
 auf'wachen *intr.* (*sein*) wake up  
 das Au'ge (-n) eye  
 der Au'genblick (-e) moment  
 augenblick'lich *adv.* instantly, for the  
     moment, just now  
 aus *prep.* (*dat.*) *or adv. or sep. pref.*  
     out, out of, from  
 der Aus'flug (<sup>u</sup>e) excursion, outing  
 aus'geben\* *tr.* spend (money)  
 ausgezeich'net *part. adj.* excellent,  
     fine  
 aus'sehen\* *intr.* look, appear  
 au'ßer *prep.* (*dat.*) out of, besides,  
     except

äu'ßern *tr.* utter  
 än'ßerst *adj.* (*superl. of äußer*) outer-  
     most, utmost; *adv.* extremely, ex-  
     ceedingly, most  
 aus'sprechen\* *tr.* express  
 aus'stoßen\* *tr.* thrust out, heave  
 aus'suchen *tr.* pick out, select  
 aus'süßen *tr.* exercise, administer  
 aus'verkaufen *tr. or intr.* sell out  
 aus'wendig *adv.* by heart  
 das Automobil' (-e) automobile  
 back'en\* *tr. or intr.* bake  
 der Bäck'er (-) baker  
 die Bäckerei' (-en) bakery  
 der Bahn'hof (<sup>u</sup>e) railway station,  
     depot  
 bald *adv.* soon  
 die Bank'note (-n) bank note, bill  
 bau'en *tr. or intr.* build  
 der Bau'er (-s *or* -n, -n) peasant,  
     farmer  
 der Baum (<sup>u</sup>e) tree  
 beant'worten *tr.* answer  
 bedau'ern *tr.* regret; das Bedauern  
     regret  
 bedau'ernswert *adj.* to be pitied  
 beden'tend *part. adj.* important  
 beeil'en *refl.* hurry  
 befeh'len\* *tr.* (*dat. of person*) com-  
     mand, bid  
 befin'den\* *refl.* be, be found  
 begeg'nen *intr.* (*dat.*) (*sein*) meet  
 begrä'ben\* *tr.* bury  
 das Begräb'nis (Begräb'nisse) burial,  
     funeral  
 behaup'ten *tr.* maintain, assert, de-  
     clare  
 behilf'lich *adj.* helpful; behilflich sein\*  
     (*sein*) help

**bei** *prep. (dat.) or sep. pref.* by, at, at the house of, with  
**bei'de** *indef. pron. or adj.* both, two  
**der Bei'fall** approval  
**beim** *contr. of bei dem*  
**beisei'te/legen** *tr.* lay aside  
**bei'ssen\*** *tr. or intr.* bite  
**bei'wohnen** *intr. (dat.)* be present at, attend  
**bekom'men\*** *tr.* receive, get  
**bemer'ten** *tr.* notice  
**der Berg** (-e) mountain  
**daß Berlin'** Berlin  
**berühmt'** *part. adj.* famous  
**beschrei'ben\*** *tr.* describe  
**besin'nen\*** *refl.* reflect, think  
**beson'ders** *adv.* especially  
**bess'er** *adj. (compar. of gut)* better  
**best** *adj. (superl. of gut)* best  
**beste'hen\*** *tr.* pass (an examination); *intr.* exist; *w. auß (dat.)* consist of  
**bestel'len** *tr.* order  
**die Bestel'lung** (-en) order  
**bestim'men** *tr.* determine, regulate  
**besu'chen** *tr.* visit  
**betrach'ten** *tr.* look at, regard  
**betref'fend** *part. adj.* concerned, referred to; **die betreffende Stelle** the passage in question  
**betrübt'** *part. adj.* grieved, distressed  
**betrü'gen\*** *tr.* deceive  
**daß Bett** (-en) bed  
**bewe'gen** *tr.* move  
**bezah'len** *tr. or intr.* pay  
**bil'lig** *adj.* cheap  
**bin'nen** *prep. (dat.)* within  
**bis** *prep. (acc.)* until, to, as far as, *subord. conj.* until  
**biß'chen** *indef. pron. or adj. (indecl.)* little, little bit

**bit'ten\*** *tr. or intr.* ask, request, beg; *w. um (acc.)* ask for; **bitte** please  
**bit'terlich** *adv.* bitterly  
**blau** *adj.* blue  
**blei'ben\*** *intr. (sein)* remain, stay; *stehen\** **bleiben\*** (*sein*) stop  
**der Blei'stift** (-e) lead pencil  
**der Blick** (-e) look  
**blid'en** *intr.* look  
**blind** *adj.* blind  
**bloß** *adv.* merely  
**der Bo'den** (<sup>u</sup>) ground, floor  
**boß'haft** *adj.* malicious, angry, furious  
**brau'chen** *tr.* need, use  
**der Bräu'tigam** (-e) betrothed  
**breit** *adj.* broad  
**daß Bre'men** Bremen  
**bren'nen\*** *intr.* burn  
**der Brief** (-e) letter  
**die Bril'le** (-n) spectacles  
**bring'en\*** *tr.* bring, take  
**der Bru'der** (<sup>u</sup>) brother  
**daß Buch** (<sup>u</sup>er) book  
**der Bun'desrat** federal council  
**der Bür'ger** (-) citizen

**da** *adv.* there, here, then; *subord. conj.* since (*of cause*)  
**dafür'** *adv.* for it, for that  
**dage'gen** *adv.* against it, against that  
**daher'** *adv. or sep. pref.* from that place, thence, consequently  
**daher'kommen\*** *intr. (sein)* come along  
**die Da'me** (-n) lady  
**damit'** *adv.* with it, with that; *subord. conj.* in order that  
**die Dank'barkeit** thankfulness, appreciation  
**dann** *adv.* then

**daran'** *adv.* at it, on it, of it, of that  
**darauf'** *adv.* on it, on that, there-upon

**darin'** *adv.* in it, in that

**darü'ber** *adv.* over it, over that

**darum'** *adv.* around it, around that, therefore

**daß** *subord. conj.* that, so that, in order that

**davon'** *adv.* of it, of that

**dazwisch'en** *adv. or sep. pref.* between them, in between

**dazwisch'en|kommen\*** *intr.* (sein) interfere, come between

**dein** (*indecl.*) *poss. pron.* (used in the predicate to denote ownership simply) yours

**dein** (dei'ne, dein; dei'ne) *poss. adj.* your

**dei'ner** (deine, dein[e]ß; deine) *or* **der dei'ne** (die deine, daß deine; die deinen) *or* **der dei'nige** (die deinige, daß deinige; die deinigen) *poss. pron.* yours

**deut'en\*** *tr. or intr.* think; denken an (*acc.*) think of, bear in mind; denken von (*dat.*) think of, have an opinion of

**deun** *adv.* then; *coörd. conj.* for

**der** (die, daß; die) *def. art.* the; *dem. pron. or adj.* that, that one, he, she, it; *rel. pron.* who, which, that

**dersel'be** (dieselbe, dasselbe; dieselben) *dem. pron. or adj.* the same

**deutsch** *adj.* German; Deutsch (*indecl.*) *or* daß Deutsche (*adj. infl.*) German (language); der Deut'sche (*adj. infl.*) German (man)

**deutsch'-französisch** *adj.* Franco-German, Franco-Prussian

**daß Deutsch'land** Germany

**der Dezem'ber** (-) December

**der Dieb** (-e) thief

**das Dienst'mädchen** (-) servant girl

**die'ser** (diese, dieseß; diese) *dem. pron.*

*or adj.* this, this one, the latter

**dies'mal** *adv.* this time

**doch** *adv.* yet, nevertheless, anyway, (*w. optative subj.*) only

**der Dok'tor** (Dokto'ren) doctor

**der Dom** (-e) cathedral

**dop'pelt** *adj.* double

**das Dorf** ("er) village

**dort** *adv.* there, yonder

**drei** *card. num.* three

**drei'mal** *adv.* three times

**drei'ßig** *card. num.* thirty

**dring'end** *part. adj.* urgent

**dritt** *ord. num.* third

**du** (dei'ner, dir, dich) *pers. pron.* you

**dumm** ("er, "st) *adj.* stupid; provoking

**der Dumm'topf** ("e) blockhead

**dunk'el** *adj.* dark

**durch** *prep. (acc.) or sep. or insep. pref.* through, by

**durchaus'** *adv.* throughout, absolutely, positively, simply

**dür'fen\*** *mod. aux.* be permitted to, may

**e'ben** *adv.* just, just now, exactly, really

**echt** *adj.* genuine, real

**die Eck'e** (-n) corner

**e'del** *adj.* noble

**e'he** *subord. conj.* before

**der E'hemann** ("er) married man, husband

**daß E'hepaar** (-e) married couple

**die Eh're** (-n) honor  
**ei'gen** *adj.* own  
**ei'len** *intr.* (sein or haben) hasten, hurry  
**ein** (ei'ne, ein) *indef. art. or card. num.*  
*adj.* a, an, one; *sep. pref.* in, into  
**einan'der** *recip. pron.* each other, one another  
**ei'ner** (eine, ein[e]s) *card. num. pron.* one  
**ei'nig** *indef. pron. or adj.* some  
**ein'laden\*** *tr.* invite  
**ein'lassen\*** *refl. w. in (acc.)* enter into, start up (a conversation)  
**ein'mal** *adv.* one time, once; *auf ein'mal* all at once; *einmal'* once, once upon a time, (*w. imperative*) just  
**ein'sam** *adj.* lonely, lonesome  
**ein'/'schlafen\*** *intr.* (sein) go to sleep  
**ein'/'wickeln** *tr.* wrap up  
**der Ein'wohner** (-) inhabitant  
**ein'zeln** *adj.* single, individual  
**das Ei'sen** (-) iron  
**das Element'** (-e) element  
**elf** *card. num.* eleven  
**die Eli'sabeth** Elizabeth  
**die El'tern** (pl.) parents  
**empört'** *part. adj.* indignant  
**end'lich** *adv.* finally  
**entdeck'en** *tr.* discover  
**entfer'nen** *refl.* withdraw, go away  
**entge'gen'sehen\*** *intr. (dat.)* look forward to, (*at the close of letters*) await  
**enthaup'ten** *tr.* behead  
**entschei'den\*** *refl.* decide  
**er** (sei'ner, ihm, ihn) *pers. pron.* he, it  
**erbar'men** *refl. (w. gen.)* take pity on, be merciful to  
**erbet'teln** *tr.* obtain by begging  
**erb'lich** *adj.* hereditary

**erfah'ren** *part. adj.* experienced  
**die Erfah'rung** (-en) experience  
**erfin'den\*** *tr.* invent  
**erge'ben** *part. adj.* devoted; *Sie stets* ergeben *yours* sincerely  
**erin'nern** *tr.* remind; *erinnern an* (*acc.*) remind of; *refl. (w. gen., or an and acc.)* remember  
**erfäl'ten** *refl.* catch cold  
**erken'nen\*** *tr.* recognize  
**ernen'nen\*** *tr.* appoint  
**erre'i'chen** *tr.* reach, attain, achieve  
**errö'ten** *intr.* (sein) blush  
**erschöpft'** *part. adj.* exhausted  
**erst** *ord. num.* first; *adv.* first, only, not until  
**erstaunt'** *part. adj.* astonished  
**erwar'ten** *tr.* expect  
**erwei'sen\*** *tr.* show  
**erwi'dern** *tr.* reply  
**erzäh'len** *tr.* tell  
**eß** (sei'ner, ihm, es) *pers. pron.* it  
**der E'sel** (-) donkey  
**es'sen\*** *tr. or intr.* eat  
**das Eß'zimmer** (-) dining room  
**et'wa** *adv.* perhaps, perchance, about  
**et'was** *indef. pron. or adj. (indecl.)* something, anything, some; *adv.* a little, somewhat, rather; *so etwas* such a thing  
**eu'er** (*indecl.*) *poss. pron. (used in the predicate to denote ownership simply)* yours  
**eu'er** (eu[e]re, euer; eu[e]re) *poss. adj.* your  
**eu'[e]rer** (eu[e]re, eu[e]res; eu[e]re) *or der eu'[e]re* (die eu[e]re, daß eu[e]re; die eu[e]ren) *or der eu'rige* (die eurige, daß eurige; die eurigen) *poss. pron.* yours

die Fabrik! (-en) factory  
 fah'ren\* *intr.* (sein) drive, ride  
 der Fall (e) case  
 fal'len\* *intr.* (sein) fall  
 falsch *adj.* wrong  
 die Far'be (-n) color  
 faul *adj.* lazy  
 der Fe'bruar (-e) February  
 die Fe'der (-n) pen  
 feh'len *intr.* (dat.) be the matter with  
 der Feind (-e) enemy  
 die Fen'sterscheibe (-n) windowpane  
 die Fe'rien (pl.) (*pronounce ie as two syllables i + e*) vacation  
 fern *adj.* far, distant; fer'ner *compar.* further  
 fer'tig *adj.* finished, ready  
 fest *adj.* firm  
 die Feu'erwehr (-en) fire brigade  
 firemen  
 fin'den\* *tr.* find; *refl.* be found  
 der Fing'er (-) finger  
 der Flei'scher (-) butcher  
 flei'ßig *adj.* industrious  
 die Flit'terwochen (pl.) honeymoon  
 der Fluß (Flü'se) river  
 fol'gen *intr.* (dat.) (sein) follow  
 förm'lich *adv.* actually, veritably, fairly  
 fort *adv. or sep. pref.* forth, away, gone  
 fort'fah'ren\* *intr.* continue  
 der Fort'schritt (-e) progress  
 die Fra'ge (-n) question  
 fra'gen *tr. or intr.* ask, question  
 das Frank'reich France  
 die Frau (-en) woman, wife, Mrs.  
 frei *adj.* free  
 das Frei'en courtship, wooing

die Frei'ersfüße (pl.) wooer's feet;  
 auf Frei'ersfüßen gehen\* (sein) go a wooing  
 fremd *adj.* strange, foreign  
 fren'dig *adj.* joyful  
 freu'en *tr.* please; es freut mich I am glad; *refl.* be glad; sich freuen über (*acc.*) be glad of, be pleased with; sich freuen auf (*acc.*) look forward to with pleasure  
 der Freund (-e) friend  
 der Fried'rich Frederick  
 der Friß Fred  
 fröh'lich *adj.* joyful  
 früh *adj.* early; frü'her *compar.* earlier, sooner  
 früh'zeitig *adj.* early, untimely  
 füh'len *refl.* feel  
 füh'ren *tr.* lead  
 die Füll'feder (-n) fountain pen  
 fünf *card. num.* five  
 fünfundzwanzig *card. num.* twenty-five  
 das Fünfundzwanzigstel (-) twenty-fifth (part)  
 für *prep.* (*acc.*) for  
 fürch'ten *refl.* be afraid; sich fürchten vor (*dat.*) be afraid of  
 der Fuß'ball (e) football  
 gäh'nen *intr.* yawn  
 ganz *adj.* whole, all; *adv.* wholly, quite, highly  
 ar *adv.* entirely, fully; gar nicht not at all; gar nichts nothing at all; ganz und gar absolutely, entirely  
 der Gast (e) guest  
 der Gat'te (-n, -n) husband  
 die Gat'tin (-nen) wife  
 gebä'ren\* *tr.* bear, give birth to

das Gebäu'de (-) building  
 ge'ben\* *tr.* give; es gibt there is, there are  
 gebrau'chen *tr.* use  
 der Geburt's/tag (-e) birthday  
 der Gedan'ke (-n's, -n) thought  
 gedant'envoll *adj.* thoughtful  
 gedenk'en\* *intr.* intend  
 geehrt' *part. adj.* honored; sehr geehrter Herr dear sir  
 gefal'len\* *intr. (dat.)* please; es gefällt mir I like it  
 gefäl'lig *adj.* obliging  
 ge'gen *prep. (acc.)* against, toward  
 gegenü'ber'sitzen\* *intr. (dat.)* sit opposite  
 die Ge'genwart presence  
 ge'hen\* *intr.* (sein) go  
 gehö'ren *intr. (dat.)* belong to  
 der Geiz'hals (Geiz'häl'se) miser, skinflint  
 geiz'ig *adj.* greedy, stingy  
 das Geld (-er) money  
 geling'en\* *impers. (w. dat.)* (sein) succeed; es gelingt mir I succeed  
 gel'ten\* *intr.* be worth; gelten\* für (*acc.*) pass for, be considered as  
 die Gemah'lin (-nen) wife; Ihre Frau Gemahlin your wife  
 gemüt'lich *adj.* comfortable  
 genü'gend *part. adj.* enough, sufficient  
 die Geographie'stunde (-n) lesson in geography  
 gera'de *adj.* straight; *adv.* just, exactly  
 gereizt' *part. adj.* irritated  
 gern (lie'ber, am lieb'sten) *adv.* gladly, willingly; ich arbeite gern I like to work

gesche'hen\* *intr.* (sein) happen  
 die Geschich'te (-n) story, history  
 der Geschmack' ("e) taste  
 das Gesicht' (-er) face  
 das Gespräch' (-e) conversation  
 gest'ern *adv.* yesterday  
 gesund' *adj.* healthy  
 getren' *adj.* faithful  
 das Gift (-e) poison  
 glatt *adj.* smooth  
 glau'ben *tr. (dat. of person)* believe  
 gleich *adj.* like, same; *adv.* (= sofort) at once, immediately  
 das Glück good fortune, luck; zum Glück luckily  
 glück'lich *adj.* happy, safe (of a journey)  
 gnäd'ig *adj.* gracious; bitte, gnädige Frau please, ma'am (madam)  
 der Gott ("er) God, god  
 das Gras (Grä'ser) grass  
 grei'fen\* *tr. or intr.* seize, grasp; er greift in die Tasche he thrusts his hand into his pocket  
 das Gret'chen Maggie, Madge, Margery  
 groß ("er, "t) *adj.* large, tall, great  
 grün *adj.* green  
 grün'den *tr.* found, establish  
 der Gruß ("e) greeting; regards, love  
 grü'ßen *tr.* greet; grü'ßen lassen\* send regards  
 gut (beß'ler, best) *adj.* good; *adv.* well  
 gut'mütig *adj.* good-natured  
 das Haar (-e) hair  
 ha'ben\* *tr.* have  
 halb *adj.* half; halb eins half past twelve  
 das Ham'burg Hamburg

- die **Hand** ('e) hand  
 der **Hand'lungsreisende** (*adj. infl.*)  
     commercial traveler, drummer  
 der **Hand'schuh** (-e) glove  
 häng'en *tr.* hang  
 der **Haus** Jack  
 haß'en *tr.* hate  
 die **Haupt'stadt** ('e) capital  
 das **Haus** (Häu'ser) house; zu Hause  
     at home; ich gehe nach Hause I am  
     going home  
 der **Haus'mann** ('er) porter, janitor  
 die **Haus'tür** (-en) front door  
 heft'ig *adj.* violent, furious  
 das **Hei'denröslein** heath rose (title  
     of a popular poem by Goethe)  
 das **Heil** welfare; Heil dir (all) hail  
 der **Hein'rich** Henry  
 hei'ser *adj.* hoarse  
 hei'sen\* *intr.* be called, be named;  
     wie heiße[st] du what is your name;  
     das heiße (d. h.) that is (i.e.)  
 der **Held** (-en, -en) hero  
 die **Hele'ne** Helen  
 hel'sen\* *intr. (dat.)* help  
 hell *adj.* bright, light  
 der **Hel'ler** (-) farthing (small cop-  
     per coin); ich habe keinen roten  
     Seller I have n't a red cent  
 das **Hemd** (-en) shirt  
 her *adv. or sep. pref.* here, hither;  
     das ist schon lange her that was a  
     long time ago  
 herein' *adv. or sep. pref.* in, in here;  
     herein! come in!  
 herein'/'kommen\* *intr.* (sein) come in  
 herein'/'treten\* *intr.* (sein) step in,  
     enter  
 her'/'gehen\* *intr.* (sein) go along,  
     walk along  
 her'/'kommen\* *intr.* (sein) come here  
 der **Herr** (-n, -en) gentleman, Mr.;  
     mein Herr sir  
 die **Her'rin** (-nen) mistress  
 herun'ter *adv. or sep. pref.* down,  
     down here  
 herun'ter/'fallen\* *intr.* (sein) fall, fall  
     down  
 herun'ter/'kommen\* *intr.* (sein) come  
     down  
 hervor' *adv. or sep. pref.* forth, for-  
     ward  
 hervor'/'bringen\* *tr.* bring forth, get  
     out  
 hervor'/'ziehen\* *tr.* draw forth, pull  
     out  
 das **Herz** (-ens, -en) heart  
 herz'lich *adj.* hearty, cordial  
 heu'te *adv.* to-day; heute morgen  
     this morning; heute abend this  
     evening  
 hier *adv.* here  
 hin *adv. or sep. pref.* thither, there,  
     away, gone; hin und her to and  
     fro, back and forth  
 hinab' *adv. or sep. pref.* down, down  
     there  
 hinauf' *adv. or sep. pref.* up, up there  
 hinauf'/'rasen *intr.* (sein) rush up  
     madly, storm up  
 hinaus' *adv. or sep. pref.* out, out  
     there  
 hinaus'/'fahren\* *intr.* (sein) drive out  
 hinein' *adv. or sep. pref.* in, in there,  
     into  
 hinein'/'schreiben\* *tr.* write in  
 hinein'/'sehen\* *intr.* look in  
 hin'/'kommen\* *intr.* (sein) come to a  
     place, get there  
 hin'/'reichen *tr.* hold out to

**hin'** *setzen* *refl.* sit down

**hin'ten** *adv.* behind, in the rear, at the back

**hin'ter** *prep.* (*dat. or acc.*) behind

**hinun'ter** *adv. or sep. pref.* down, down there

**hinun'ter|gehen\*** *intr.* (*sein*) go down

**hinzu'** *adv. or sep. pref.* up to, besides

**hinzu'** *fügen* *tr.* add

**hoch** (*hö'her, höchst*) *adj.* high; *höchst* *adv.* most, extremely

**hoch|achtungsvoll** *adj.* very respectful; (*closing formula in letters*) yours respectfully, very truly yours

**hoch|poliert** *part. adj.* highly polished

**der Hof** (*"e*) courtyard, back yard

**ho'len** *tr.* fetch, get

**hö'ren** *tr. or intr.* hear

**daß Huhn** (*"er*) chicken

**der Hund** (*-e*) dog

**hung'ern** *impers. (w. acc.)* be hungry;

*eß* *hungert* *mich* I am hungry

**der Hut** (*"e*) hat

**ich** (*mei'ner, mir, mich*) *pers. pron.* I

**ihr** (*eu'er, euch, euch*) *pers. pron.* you

**ihr** *dat. of* sie her

**ihr** (*ih're, ihr; ih're*) *poss. adj.* her, its, their

**Ihr** (*Sh're, Ihr; Sh're*) *poss. adj.* your

**ih'rer** (*ihre, ihres; ihre*) *or* **der ih're** (*die ihre, daß ihre; die ihren*) *or* **der ih'rige** (*die ihrige, daß ihrige; die ihrigen*) *poss. pron.* hers, theirs

**Sh'rer** (*Shre, Shreß; Shre*) *or* **Sh're** (*die Shre, daß Shre; die Shren*) *or* **der Sh'rige** (*die Shrige, daß Shrige; die Shrigen*) *poss. pron.* yours

**im** *contr. of* in dem

**im'mer** *adv.* always; immer kälter colder and colder

**in** *prep.* (*dat. or acc.*) in, into, to

**indem'** *subord. conj.* while

**inß** *contr. of* in daß

**interessant'** *adj.* interesting

**interessie'ren** *tr.* interest; *sich* *interessieren für* (*acc.*) be interested in  
**der Ir'länder** (*-*) Irishman

**ja** *adv.* yes, why, you know

**daß Jahr** (*-e*) year

**daß Jahrhun'dert** (*-e*) century

**der Ja'kob** Jacob, James

**jawohl'** *adv.* yes, yes indeed

**je** *adv.* ever

**je'der** (*jede, jedes*) *indef. pron. or adj.* each, each one, every, everybody

**je'dermann** *indef. pron.* everybody

**je'desmal** *adv.* every time

**je'ner** (*jene, jenes; jene*) *dem. pron. or adj.* that, that one, the former

**jet'ig** *adj.* present

**jeht** *adv.* now

**der Ju'li** (*-ß*) July

**jung** (*"er, "st*) *adj.* young

**der Jung'gefell** (*-en, -en*) bachelor

**der Ju'ni** (*-ß*) June

**der Kai'ser** (*-*) emperor

**die Kai'serin** (*-nen*) empress

**daß Kai'serreich** (*-e*) empire

**die Kai'serwürde** imperial dignity

**kalt** (*"er, "est*) *adj.* cold

**der Karl** Charles

**der Kartoff'felbrei** mashed potatoes

**die Kat'ze** (*-n*) cat

**der Kauf** (*"e*) purchase, bargain

**kau'fen** *tr.* buy

der Kauf'mann (Kauf'leute) merchant  
 kaum *adv.* hardly, scarcely  
 keh'ren *tr.* turn; *intr.* (sein) return  
 kein (kei'ne, kein; kei'ne) *indef. adj.*  
     no, not a, not any  
 kei'ner (keine, kein[e]s; keine) *indef.*  
     *pron.* none, not any, not one  
 ken'nen\* *tr.* know, be acquainted  
     with  
 kern'gesund *adj.* thoroughly healthy,  
     hale and hearty  
 das Kind (-er) child  
 die Kir'che (-n) church  
 die Kist'e (-n) box  
 die Klas'se (-n) class  
 der Klas'senunterricht teaching, in-  
     struction  
 das Kleid (-er) dress  
 klei'den *refl.* dress  
 klein *adj.* little, small  
 klug ("er, "ft) *adj.* smart, clever,  
     bright  
 der Kna'be (-n, -n) boy  
 der Knecht (-e) hired man, farm hand  
 der Knoch'en (-) bone  
 Koch'en *tr. or intr.* cook, boil  
 das Köln Cologne  
 der Kolum'bus Columbus  
 kom'men\* *intr.* (sein) come  
 der Kö'nig (-e) king  
 das Kö'nigreich (-e) kingdom  
 kön'nen\* *mod. aux.* can, be able to  
 der Kopf ("e) head  
 die Kopf'schmerzen (*pl.*) headache  
 kost'en *intr.* (*dat. of person, acc. of*  
     *price*) cost, be worth  
 der Kra'gen (-) collar  
 krank ("er, "ft) *adj.* sick  
 krat'en *tr. or intr.* scratch  
 das Kraut ("er) herb, weed

der Krieg (-e) war  
 der Kron'prinz (-en, -en) crown  
     prince  
 der Ku'chen (-) cake  
 der Kun'de (-n, -n) customer  
 der Kün'st'ler (-) artist  
 kurz ("er, "est) *adj.* short, curt; vor  
     kurzem a short time ago, recently  
 läch'eln *intr.* smile  
 lach'en *intr.* laugh  
 der La'den (") shop, store  
 der La'dentisch (-e) counter  
 das Land ("er) land, country; auf  
     dem Lande in the country; auf  
     das Land [in]to the country  
 die Land'karte (-n) map  
 lang ("er, "ft) *adj.* long  
 lang'e *adv.* long, for a long time  
 lang'weilen *tr.* tire, bore  
 las'sen\* *tr.* leave, let, cause, have  
     (something done); können Sie es  
     mir nicht billiger lassen can you  
     not let me have it cheaper  
 die Later'ne (-n) lantern  
 lau'fen\* *intr.* (sein) run  
 laut *adj.* loud; *adv.* aloud, loudly  
 laut'en *intr.* sound; wie lautete die  
     Antwort what was the answer  
 le'ben *intr.* live  
 das Le'ben (-) life  
 leb'haft *adj.* lively  
 le'gen *tr.* lay, put  
 leh'ren *tr.* teach  
 der Leh'rer (-) teacher  
 die Lei'che (-n) corpse  
 lei'den\* *tr. or intr.* suffer, endure;  
     leiden\* an (*dat.*) suffer with  
 lei'der *interj.* unfortunately, I am  
     sorry to say

**lei'hen\*** *tr.* lend; **leihen\*** *von* (*dat.*)

borrow of or from

**lei'se** *adj.* low, soft, gentle

**ler'nen** *tr. or intr.* learn, study

**le'sen\*** *tr. or intr.* read

**leht** *adj.* last; zum letztenmal last,  
for the last time

**die Leu'te** (*pl.*) people

**daß Licht** (*-er*) light

**lieb** *adj.* dear

**lie'ben** *tr.* love

**lie'ber** *adv.* (*compar. of gern*) rather,  
preferably

**lieb'|haben\*** *tr.* be fond of, like, love

**daß Lied** (*-er*) song, poem

**lie'gen\*** *intr.* lie, be, be situated

**die Literatur'** (*-en*) literature

**lo'ben** *tr.* praise

**Lud'wigstr.** *abbrev. of* Lud'wigstraße  
Ludwig street

**lü'gen\*** *intr.* lie, tell a falsehood

**mach'en** *tr.* make, do

**mäch'tig** *adj.* powerful, mighty

**die Madame** (*silent e*) (*-n*) madam

**der Ma'gen** (*-*) stomach

**der Mai** (*-e[n]*) May

**die Maffaro'nifabrik** (*-en*) macaroni  
factory

**mal** (= einmal') *adv.* once, just

**daß Mal** (*-e*) time; drei mal vier  
three times four

**man** *indef. pron.* one, they, you;  
man sagt it is said

**man'cher** (*manche, manches; manche*)  
*indef. pron. or adj.* many, many a,  
some

**manch'mal** *adv.* often

**der Mann** (*"er*) man, husband

**der Man'tel** (*"*) cloak

**die Marie'** Mary

**die Mark** (*-*) mark (silver coin worth  
about 24 cents); vier Mark four  
marks

**der März** (*-e*) March

**die Mas'se** (*-n*) mask

**der Mathema'tiker** (*-*) mathemati-  
cian

**daß Maul** (*"er*) mouth

**daß Maul'voll** (*-*) mouthful

**mehr** (*indecl.*) *indef. pron. or adj.*  
(*compar. of viel*) more; *adv.* more,  
longer

**meh'rere** (*pl.*) *indef. pron. or adj.*  
several

**die Mei'le** (*-n*) mile (the German  
mile = about  $4\frac{1}{2}$  English miles)

**mein** (*indecl.*) *poss. pron.* (*used in the*  
*predicate to denote ownership sim-*  
*ply*) mine

**mein** (*mei'ne, mein; mei'ne*) *poss. adj.*  
my

**mei'nen** *tr.* think, mean, say

**mei'ner** (*meine, mein[e]ß; meine*) *or*  
der *mei'ne* (*die meine, daß meine;*  
*die meinen*) *or* der *mei'nige* (*die*  
*meinige, daß meinige; die meini-*  
*gen*) *poss. pron.* mine

**daß Mei'sterstück** (*-e*) masterpiece

**die Meng'e** (*-n*) crowd, heap, lot

**der Mensch** (*-en, -en*) man, human  
being, fellow

**meß'en\*** *tr.* measure, survey

**daß Meß'er** (*-*) knife

**militä'risch** *adj.* military

**die Minu'te** (*-n*) minute

**mit** *prep.* (*dat.*) *or adv. or sep. pref.*  
with, along

**mit'|bringen\*** *tr.* bring along

**mit'|gehen\*** *intr.* (*sein*) go along

das Mit'glied (-er) member  
 mit'kommen\* *intr.* (sein) come along  
 mit'teilen *tr.* inform  
 das Mit'tel (-) means  
 mit'ten *adv.* midst; mitten in (*dat.*  
*or acc.*) in the midst of  
 der Mitt'woch (-e) Wednesday  
 mö'gen\* *mod. aux.* may, like, like to  
 mög'licherweise *adv.* possibly  
 der Mo'nat (-e) month  
 der Mon'tag (-e) Monday  
 mor'gen *adv.* to-morrow; morgen  
 früh to-morrow morning  
 der Mor'gen (-) morning; heute  
 morgen this morning; des Mor-  
 gens mornings, in the morning  
 das Mü'n'chen Munich  
 der Mund (-e) mouth  
 müs'sen\* *mod. aux.* must, have to,  
 be obliged to  
 die Mut'ter (") mother  
 die Müt'te (-n) cap

na *interj.* now, well  
 nach *prep.* (*dat.*) *or sep. pref.* after, to,  
 according to  
 der Nach'bar (-n) neighbor  
 die Nach'barschaft (-en) neighbor-  
 hood  
 nachdem' *subord. conj.* after  
 der Nach'mittag (-e) afternoon  
 nach'sehen\* *intr.* (*dat.*) gaze after; *tr.*  
*or intr.* investigate, go and see, see  
 nach'springen\* *intr.* (*dat.*) (sein) run  
 after  
 nächst *adj.* (*superl.* of na'he) nearest,  
 next  
 der Na'gel (") nail  
 na'he (näher, nächst) *adj.* near  
 nä'hern *refl.* approach

der Na'me (-nā, -n) name; namens  
 by name, named  
 näm'lich *adv.* namely, you know, you  
 see, because  
 ne'ben *prep.* (*dat. or acc.*) beside  
 das Ne'benzimmer (-) adjoining  
 room  
 neh'men\* *tr.* take  
 nein *adv.* no  
 nen'nen\* *tr.* name, call  
 neu *adj.* new  
 neun *card. num.* nine  
 nicht *adv.* not  
 nichts *indef. pron.* (*indecl.*) nothing  
 nie *adv.* never  
 nie'der *adv. or sep. pref.* down  
 nie'derge schlagen *part. adj.* de-  
 pressed, dejected  
 nie'mand *indef. pron.* nobody  
 noch *adv.* still, additional; noch ein  
 another; noch einmal once more,  
 again; noch nicht not yet  
 das Notiz'buch (") notebook  
 die Nu'delfabrik (-en) noodle factory  
 nun *adv.* now, (*when set off by a*  
*comma at beginning of a sentence*)  
 well  
 nur *adv.* only, (*v. imperative*) just

ob *subord. conj.* whether, if; als ob  
 as if  
 o'ben *adv.* above, upstairs  
 die O'berleitung supreme direction,  
 management  
 obgleich' *subord. conj.* although  
 o'der *coörd. conj.* or  
 öff'nen *tr.* open  
 oft (") *adv.* often  
 öf'ters *adv.* (*compar. of oft + s*) fre-  
 quently

**oh'ne** *prep. (acc.)* without  
**das Ohr** (-en) ear  
**die Ohr'feige** (-n) box on the ear  
**der On'kel** (-) uncle  
**or'dentlich** *adj.* orderly, regular,  
 downright, thorough  
**der Ort** (-e or <sup>er</sup>) place

**paar** *indef. pron. or adj. (indecl.)* few;  
 ein paar a few, several  
**das Paar** (-e) pair, couple  
**passie'ren** *intr.* (sein) happen  
**der Patient'** (-en, -en) (*pronounce*  
 patsjent') patient  
**persön'lich** *adj.* personal  
**die Pfei'fe** (-n) pipe  
**der Pfennig** (-or-e) pfennig, penny  
 (copper coin worth  $\frac{1}{4}$  cent); fünf  
 Pfennig five pfennigs

**das Pferd** (-e) horse  
**pfif'fig** *adj.* cunning, sly  
**die Pficht** (-en) duty  
**die Phone'tik** phonetics  
**plöz'lich** *adj.* sudden  
**poli'tisch** *adj.* political  
**der Preis** (Prei'se) price  
**das Preu'ßen** Prussia  
**der Profes'sor** (Professo'ren) profes-  
 sor  
**die Prü'fung** (-en) test, examination  
**das Pult** (-e) desk

**quä'len** *tr.* torment

**rasch** *adj.* quick  
**ra'ten\*** *tr. or intr. (dat. of person)*  
 advise, guess  
**der Räu'ber** (-) robber  
**rau'chen** *tr. or intr.* smoke; **das Rau's**  
 chen smoking

**das Rech'nen** arithmetic  
**recht** *adj.* right  
**das Recht** (-e) right; **recht geben\***  
 agree with; **recht haben\*** be right  
**rechts** *adv.* on the right, to the right  
**re'den** *intr.* talk, speak  
**regie'ren** *intr.* reign  
**die Regie'run**g (-en) government  
**reg'nen** *impers.* rain  
**reich** *adj.* rich  
**das Reich** (-e) empire  
**rei'chen** *tr.* reach, hand  
**die Reichs'regierung** government of  
 the empire  
**der Reichs'tag** (-e) Reichstag, im-  
 perial diet  
**die Rei'he** (-n) row  
**rein** *adj.* pure, clean, downright, ab-  
 solute  
**rei'sen** *intr.* (sein) travel, go  
**der Rei'sende** (*adj. infl.*) traveler  
**der Res'tor** (Res'toren) rector, prin-  
 cipal  
**die Republi'** (-en) republic  
**der Rhein** Rhine  
**rich'ten** *tr.* direct, address  
**rich'tig** *adj.* correct  
**der Rod** (<sup>er</sup>) coat  
**die Rol'le** (-n) roll  
**das Rom** Rome  
**der Roman'** (-e) novel  
**rot** (<sup>er</sup>, <sup>est</sup>) *adj.* red  
**ru'fen\*** *tr. or intr.* call, cry, exclaim

**sa'gen** *tr.* say, tell  
**das Sau'erkraut** sauerkraut  
**der Scha'den** (<sup>n</sup>) damage  
**schä'men** *refl.* be ashamed  
**scharf** (<sup>er</sup>, <sup>st</sup>) *adj.* sharp  
**schät'zen** *tr.* esteem, value

der Schau'felfstuhl ("e) rocking-chair  
 der Scheck (-ē) check  
 schei'den\* *tr., or intr.* (sein) separate,  
 part  
 schenk'en *tr.* give, present  
 der Scherz (-e) jest, joke, fun  
 schick'en *tr.* send; *refl.* be proper  
 das Schiff (-e) ship  
 der Schlaf'wagen (-) sleeping car,  
 sleeper  
 der Schlag'ball ("e) baseball  
 schla'gen\* *tr.* strike, hit  
 schlau *adj.* sly  
 schlecht *adj.* bad  
 schlei'chen\* *refl.* sneak  
 schlie'ßen\* *tr. or intr.* close  
 der Schlitt'schuh (-e) skate; Schlitt-  
 schuh laufen\* (sein) skate  
 schluch'zen *intr.* sob  
 der Schluß (Schlüß) close  
 der Schmutz'fink (*gen.* -en, *dat. and*  
*acc.* -en or -, *pl.* -en) dirty fellow  
 schmutz'ig *adj.* dirty  
 der Schnei'der (-) tailor  
 schnei'en *impers.* snow  
 schnell *adj.* quick, fast, swift  
 der Schnell'zug ("e) express train  
 schon *adv.* already, all right, never fear  
 schön *adj.* beautiful, pretty, fine, nice  
 der Schoß ("e) lap  
 schrei'ben\* *tr. or intr.* write  
 die Schreib'maschine (-n) typewriter  
 der Schritt (-e) step, pace, stride  
 schuld *pred. adj.* responsible; er ist  
 schuld daran he is the cause of  
 it, he is to blame for it  
 die Schuld (-en) debt, fault  
 schul'den *tr.* owe  
 die Schu'le (-n) school  
 der Schü'ler (-) pupil

das Schul'jahr (-e) school year  
 das Schul'zimmer (-) schoolroom  
 der Schu'ler (-) cobbler  
 schüt'teln *tr. or intr.* shake  
 schwach ("er, "st) *adj.* weak  
 schwei'gen\* *intr.* be silent  
 das Schwei'nefleisch pork  
 die Schweiz Switzerland  
 schwer'hörig *adj.* hard of hearing  
 schwer'krank *adj.* very sick  
 schwim'men\* *intr.* (sein) swim  
 sechs *card. num.* six  
 sechs'mal *adv.* six times  
 sechs'zehn *card. num.* sixteen  
 sechs'zig *card. num.* sixty  
 se'hen\* *tr. or intr.* see  
 sehr *adv.* very, very much  
 sein\* *intr.* (sein) be  
 sein (*indecl.*) *poss. pron.* (used in the  
 predicate to denote ownership sim-  
 ply) his  
 sein (sei'ne, sein; sei'ne) *poss. adj.* his,  
 its  
 sei'ner (seine, sein[e]s; seine) or der  
 sei'ne (die seine, das seine; die sei-  
 nen) or der sei'nige (die seinige, das  
 seinige; die seinigen) *poss. pron.* his  
 seit *prep. (dat.)* since  
 seitdem' *adv.* since then; *subord. conj.*  
 since  
 die Sei'te (-n) side, page  
 selb *adj.* same  
 sel'ber *intensive pron. (indecl.)* self  
 selbst *intensive pron. (indecl.)* self;  
*adv.* even  
 die Sen'dung (-en) shipment, con-  
 signment  
 set'en *tr.* set, put; *refl.* sit down  
 seuf'zen *intr.* sigh  
 der Seuf'zer (-) sigh

**sich** *refl. or recip. pron. (indecl.)* himself, herself, itself, themselves, yourself, yourselves, each other, one another

**sich'er** *adj.* safe, sure, certain

**sie** (ih'rer, ihr, sie) *pers. pron.* she, it

**sie** (ih'rer, ih'nen, sie) *pers. pron.* they

**Sie** (Ih'rer, Ih'nen, Sie) *pers. pron.* you

**sie'ben** *card. num.* seven

**siebt** *ord. num.* seventh

**der Sie'gerkranz** (<sup>u</sup>e) victor's wreath

**sing'en\*** *tr. or intr.* sing

**der Sinn** (-e) sense, mind

**sinn'en\*** *intr.* meditate, reflect

**sitz'en\*** *intr.* sit

**so** *adv.* so, then

**sobald** *subord. conj.* as soon as

**soe'ben** *adv.* just, just now

**sosort'** *adv.* at once, immediately

**sogleich'** *adv.* at once, immediately

**der Sohn** (<sup>u</sup>e) son

**sol'cher** (sol'che, sol'ches; sol'che) *dem. pron. or adj.* such; sol'ch ein or ein sol'cher such a

**der Soldat'** (-en, -en) soldier

**sol'len\*** *mod. aux.* be to, ought to, be said to, shall

**son'bern** *coörd. conj.* but

**die Son'ne** (-n) sun

**der Sonn'tag** (-e) Sunday

**sowie'** *subord. conj.* as soon as

**spät** *adj.* late

**spazie'ren** *intr.* (sein) walk about; spazieren gehen\* (sein) go walking

**der Spazier'gang** (<sup>u</sup>e) walk; einen Spaziergang machen take a walk

**die Spin'ne** (-n) spider

**die Spitz'e** (-n) point, head

**spöt'tisch** *adj.* scoffing, sarcastic

**sprech'en\*** *tr. or intr.* speak, speak to, see

**das Sprich'wort** (<sup>u</sup>er) proverb

**spring'en\*** *intr.* (sein) jump

**der Staat** (-en) state

**die Stadt** (<sup>u</sup>e) city

**stark** (<sup>u</sup>er, <sup>u</sup>st) *adj.* strong, hard (of rain)

**statt** *prep. (gen.)* instead of

**ste'hen\*** *intr.* stand, be

**die Stel'le** (-n) place, passage

**ster'ben\*** *intr.* (sein) die; das Ster'ben dying, death

**stets** *adv.* always, constantly

**die Stim'me** (-n) voice

**das Stimm'recht** franchise, right to vote

**der Stoß** (-[e]) story, floor; im zweiten Stoß in the third story

**stolz** *adj.* proud

**stö'ren** *tr.* disturb

**Str.** *abbrev. of* Stra'ße street

**die Stra'ße** (-n) street

**die Streck'e** (-n) stretch, way, distance

**das Streich'holz** (<sup>u</sup>er) match

**streng** *adj.* strict

**der Strumpf** (<sup>u</sup>e) stocking

**studie'ren** *tr. or intr.* study

**die Stun'de** (-n) hour, hour's journey, lesson

**stür'zen** *intr.* (sein) rush, plunge

**die Sup'pe** (-n) soup

**der Sup'penknochen** (-) soup bone

**der Tag** (-e) day

**täg'lich** *adj.* daily

**der Tal'ler** (-) taler (silver coin worth about 72 cents)

**die Tan'te** (-n) aunt

die **Tasch'e** (-n) pocket  
 tau'send *card. num.* thousand  
 thei'len *tr.* divide  
 das **Telephon'** (-e) telephone  
 teu'er *adj.* dear, expensive  
 das **Thea'ter** (-) theater  
 tief *adj.* deep  
 das **Tier** (-e) animal  
 der **Tier'garten** (<sup>u</sup>) zoölogical garden  
 der **Tisch** (-e) table  
 der **Tod** (*pl.* To'des'fälle) death  
 tö'ten *tr. or intr.* kill  
 tra'gen\* *tr.* carry, bear, wear  
 trau'rig *adj.* sad  
 die **Trep'pe** (-n) stairway, [flight of]  
     stairs, [flight of] steps  
 tre'ten\* *intr.* (sein) step  
 trink'en\* *tr. or intr.* drink  
 trom'meln *intr.* drum; mit den Zin=  
     gern trommeln beat a tattoo  
 tüch'tig *adj.* capable, thorough,  
     hearty  
 tun\* *tr. or intr.* do, act, put  
 die **Tür** (-en) door  
 die **Türkei'** Turkey  
 ü'ber *prep.* (*dat. or acc.*), *or sep. or*  
     *insep. pref.* over, above, across  
 überfah'ren\* *tr.* drive over, run  
     over  
 überfal'len\* *tr.* fall upon, attack sud=  
     denly, hold up (a train)  
 ü'bermorgen *adv.* day after to-morrow  
 überrasch'en *tr.* surprise  
 die **Überrasch'ung** (-en) surprise  
 überrei'then *tr.* hand over  
 überwäl'tigen *tr.* overpower  
 überzeu'gen *tr.* convince  
 die **Uhr** (-en) watch, clock, o'clock;  
     wieviel Uhr ist es what time is it

um *prep.* (*acc.*), *or sep. or insep. pref.*  
     around; um zwei Uhr at two  
     o'clock; um zu (*w. infin.*) [in  
     order] to  
 und *coörd. conj.* and  
 un'erwartet *adj.* unexpected  
 ungefähr' *adv.* about  
 das **Un'glück** misfortune  
 unmög'lich *adj.* impossible  
 die **Unmög'lichkeit** (-en) impos=  
     sibility  
 un'ser (*indecl.*) *poss. pron.* (*used in*  
     *the predicate to denote ownership*  
     *simply*) ours  
 un'ser (un[s][e]re, unser; un[s][e]re)  
     *poss. adj.* our  
 un's[s]erer (un[s][e]re, un[s][e]res;  
     un[s][e]re) *or* der un's[s]ere (die  
     un[s][e]re, das un[s][e]re; die un[s][e]=  
     ren) *or* der un'srige (die un'srige,  
     das un'srige; die un'srigen) *poss.*  
     *pron.* ours  
 der **Un'sinn** nonsense, folly  
 un'ten *adv.* below, downstairs  
 un'ter *prep.* (*dat. or acc.*), *or sep. or*  
     *insep. pref.* under, among  
 unterbrech'en\* *tr.* interrupt  
 un'ter|gehen *intr.* (sein) go down,  
     sink, set  
 die **Unterhal'tung** (-en) conversa=  
     tion  
 unterneh'men\* *tr.* undertake  
 un'verschäm't *adj.* shameless, impu=  
     dent  
 die **Un'verschämtheit** (-en) impu=  
     dence, insolence  
 die **Un'wahrheit** (-en) untruth,  
     story  
 usw. *abbrev. of* und so weiter and so  
     forth

der **Va'ter** (n) father  
**verab'schieden** *refl.* take one's leave, leave  
**verber'gen**\* *tr.* hide  
**verbie'ten**\* *tr.* forbid  
**verblei'ben**\* *intr.* (sein) remain  
**verblüfft'** *part. adj.* dumbfounded  
**verbring'en**\* *tr.* spend (time)  
**verdie'nen** *tr.* earn, deserve  
**der Verdruß'** annoyance, vexation  
**der Verein'** (-e) club, society  
**verei'nigt** *part. adj.* united  
**verge'bens** *adv.* in vain  
**verges'sen**\* *tr.* forget  
**vergif'ten** *tr.* poison  
**verhält'nißmäßig** *adv.* relatively, comparatively  
**verhei'raten** *refl.* get married, marry  
**verkau'fen** *tr.* sell  
**der Verkäu'fer** (-) salesman, clerk  
**verlas'sen**\* *tr.* leave, abandon  
**verle'gen** *part. adj.* embarrassed  
**verord'nen** *tr.* order, prescribe  
**verfa'gen** *tr.* previously grant to others; **anderwärts versagt sein**\* have another (or a previous) engagement  
**verschent'en** *tr.* give away  
**verschie'den** *part. adj.* different, various  
**verschrei'ben**\* *tr.* prescribe  
**verschwen'derisch** *adj.* wasteful, extravagant  
**verschwin'den**\* *intr.* (sein) disappear  
**verspie'len** *tr.* lose in gambling, gamble away  
**versprech'en**\* *tr.* promise; *refl.* make a mistake in speaking  
**verst'e'hen**\* *tr. or intr.* understand; **fälsch verstehen**\* misunderstand

**versu'chen** *tr.* attempt, try  
**vertieft'** *part. adj.* absorbed  
**verur'teilen** *tr.* sentence  
**verzi'hten** *intr.* (auf w. acc.) abandon, renounce, give up  
**der Vet'ter** (-n) cousin  
**viel** (mehr, meist) *indef. pron. or adj.* much, many  
**vielleicht'** *adv.* perhaps  
**vier** *card. num.* four  
**vier'mal** *adv.* four times  
**viert** *ord. num.* fourth  
**das Vier'tel** (-) quarter, fourth (part)  
**die Volks'schule** (-n) public school  
**voll** *adj.* full  
**vollen'den** *tr.* finish, complete  
**vom** *contr. of von dem*  
**von** *prep. (dat.)* from, by, of  
**vor** *prep. (dat. or acc.)* before, in front of; **vor zwei Jahren** two years ago  
**vorbei'** *adv. or sep. pref.* past, over  
**vorbei'eilen** *intr.* (sein) hurry past  
**vorbei'fahren**\* *intr.* (sein) drive past  
**vorbei'kommen**\* *intr.* (sein) pass by, pass  
**vor'gestern** *adv.* day before yesterday  
**vorher'** *adv. or sep. pref.* before, previously  
**vorhin'** *adv.* just now, a minute ago  
**vor'rig** *adj.* former, last  
**vor'kommen**\* *intr.* (sein) seem  
**die Vor'lesung** (-en) lecture  
**vorn** *adv.* in front, in the fore part  
**vor'sprechen**\* *intr.* (bei w. dat.) call at one's house  
**vor'wurfsvoll** *adj.* reproachful  
**vor'ziehen**\* *tr.* prefer

die **Wacht** (-en) watch, guard  
 der **Wa'gen** (-) coach, car  
**wäh'len** *tr.* choose, select, elect  
**wahr** *adj.* true; **nicht wahr** is it not so, is n't it, was n't he, won't you, could n't they, etc.

**wäh'rend** *prep. (gen.)* during; *subord. conj.* while

der **Wald** (er) forest, woods  
**wann** *adv. or subord. conj.* when  
**war'ten** *intr.* wait; **warten auf** (*acc.*) wait for

das **War'tezimmer** (-) waiting room  
**warum'** *adv. or subord. conj.* why  
**was** (weß'sen, -, was) *interrog. pron.* what; *rel. pron.* that, that which, what; *indef. pron.* (= et'was) something; **was für** what kind of; **was für ein** what kind of

**wasch'en\*** *tr. or intr.* wash  
 der **Weg** (-e) way, road; **am Wege** by the roadside

**wegen** *prep. (gen.)* on account of  
**weib'lich** *adj.* feminine, womanly  
 die **Weih'nachten** (*pl., but used without art. w. sg. verb*) Christmas

**weil** *subord. conj.* because

der **Wein** (-e) wine

**wei'nen** *intr.* cry

die **Wei'se** (-n) way, manner

**weis'machen** *tr.* make believe, deceive; **das kannst du mir nicht weismachen** you cannot make me believe that

**weit** *adj.* far; **wei'ter compar.** further, on; **und so weiter** and so forth; **weiter interj.** go on, continue

**wei'ter|fahren\*** *intr.* (sein) drive on

**wei'ter|rauchen** *intr.* continue to smoke, smoke on

**wel'cher** (welche, welches; welche) *interrog. pron. or adj.* which, which one, what, what one; *rel. pron.* who, which, that; *indef. pron.* some

die **Welt** (-en) world

**wen'den\*** *tr.* turn; *refl.* turn

**we'nig** *indef. pron. or adj.* little, few; **we'niger compar.** less, fewer

**wenn** *subord. conj.* if, when, whenever; **wenn . . . auch** even if

**wer** (weß'sen, wem, wen) *interrog. pron.* who; *rel. pron.* he who, whoever

**wer'den\*** *intr.* (sein) become, get, turn

**wert'voll** *adj.* valuable

der **West'en** west

**wi'der** *prep. (acc.) or insep. pref.* against

**wie** *adv. or subord. conj.* how, as, like

**wie'der** *adv., or sep. or insep. pref.* again

**wie'der|holen** *tr.* bring again or back

**wiederho'len** *tr.* repeat

das **Wie'derschen** seeing again; **auf Wiedersehen** good-by

**wieviel'** *indef. pron. or adj.* how much, how many; **wieviel Uhr ist es** what time is it

**wievielt'** *ord. num.* which (by number); **der wievielte ist heute** what day of the month is it

der **Win'ter** (-) winter

**wir** (un'ser, uns, uns) *pers. pron.* we

**wir'lich** *adj.* real

**wis'sen\*** *tr.* know

**wo** *adv. or subord. conj.* where

die **Woch'e** (-n) week

**wohin'** *adv. or subord. conj.* whither, where

**wohl** *adv.* well, probably, indeed, no doubt

**woh'nen** *intr.* dwell, live

**die Woh'nung** (-en) dwelling, apartment

**das Wohn'zimmer** (-) sitting room

**wol'llen\*** *mod. aux.* will, want, want to, wish, wish to, intend to, be about to, claim to

**womit'** *adv. or subord. conj.* with what, with which

**woran'** *adv. or subord. conj.* of what, at which, on which

**worauf'** *adv. or subord. conj.* on what, on which

**das Wort** ("er or -e) word

**das Wör'terbuch** ("er) dictionary

**wovon'** *adv. or subord. conj.* of what, of which

**wozu'** *adv. or subord. conj.* to what, for what, why, to which, for which

**wun'dern** *refl.* wonder

**wün'schen** *tr.* wish, desire

**die Wurst** ("e) sausage; Wurst wider Wurst tit for tat

**der Zahn** ("e) tooth

**der Zahn'arzt** ("e) dentist

**die Zahn'schmerzen** (pl.) toothache

**zehn** *card. num.* ten

**zehn'mal** *adv.* ten times

**zehnt** *ord. num.* tenth

**das Zehn'tel** (-) tenth (part)

**zeich'nen** *tr. or intr.* draw, (at the close of letters) remain

**die Zeit** (-en) time; eine Zeitlang for a while

**die Zeit'ung** (-en) newspaper

**zerbrech'en\*** *tr., or intr.* (sein) break, break to pieces

**zerrei'ssen\*** *tr., or intr.* (sein) tear, tear to pieces

**zie'hen\*** *tr.* draw, pull; *intr.* (sein) go, move

**die Zigar're** (-n) cigar

**das Zim'mer** (-) room

**zö'gern** *intr.* hesitate

**zu** *prep.* (dat.) or *sep. pref.* to; *adv.* too, to, shut

**zu'|bereiten** *tr.* prepare

**zu'|bringen\*** *tr.* spend (time)

**zufrie'den** *adj.* satisfied, pleased

**der Zug** ("e) train

**zugleich'** *adv.* at the same time

**zuleht'** *adv.* at last, last of all, finally

**zum** *contr. of zu dem*

**zu'|machen** *tr.* close

**zur** *contr. of zu der*

**zurück'** *adv. or sep. pref.* back

**zurück'|kehren** *intr.* (sein) return

**zurück'|kommen\*** *intr.* (sein) come back

**zurück'|rufen\*** *tr.* call back

**zu'|schließen\*** *tr.* lock

**zuteil'** *adv.* to the lot of; zuteil werden\* fall to the lot of

**zwan'zig** *card. num.* twenty

**zwei** *card. num.* two

**zweihun'dert** *card. num.* two hundred

**zwei'mal** *adv.* twice

**zweit** *ord. num.* second

**zwölf** *card. num.* twelve

**zwölft** *ord. num.* twelfth



# ENGLISH-GERMAN VOCABULARY

**a** *indef. art.* ein (ei'ne, ein)

**able:** be able to fö'n'nen\* *mod. aux.*

**about:** be about to wol'len\* *mod. aux.*;

he was about to go when er wollte  
eben gehen, als

**absorbed** *part.adj.* vertieft' (in, in *acc.*)

**accompany** beglei'ten *tr.*

**account:** on account of we'gen *prep.*  
(*gen.*)

**acquaintance** der Befann'te (*adj. infl.*)

**acquainted** *part. adj.* bekannt'; be-  
come acquainted with kennen\* ler-  
nen

**act** han'deln *intr.*; act as if tun\*,  
als ob

**actually** *adv.* (= downright, posi-  
tively) or'dentlich

**add** hinzü'fügen *tr.*

**Adele** die Ade'le

**adjoining room** das Ne'benzimmer (-)

**advise** ra'ten\* *tr.* (*dat. of person*)

**affirmative:** reply to . . . in the af-  
firmative beja'hen *tr.*

**afraid:** be afraid sich fürch'ten (of,  
vor *dat.*)

**Africa** das Af'rika

**after** *subord. conj.* nachdem'; *prep.*  
nach (*dat.*); after all doch *adv.*

**afternoon** der Nach'mittag (-e); this  
afternoon heute nachmittag; in the  
afternoon nachmittags; one after-  
noon eines Nachmittags

**again** *adv.* wie'der

**against** *prep.* ge'gen (*acc.*)

**age** al'tern *intr.* (sein)

**agent** (= ticket agent) der [Schal'-  
ter]beamte (*adj. infl.*)

**ago** *adv.* vor *prep.* (*dat.*); six years  
ago vor sechs Jahren

**Alabama** das Alaba'ma

**alike** *adj.* gleich

**all** *indef. pron. or adj.* all; (= whole)  
ganz; all day den ganzen Tag; not  
at all gar nicht; nothing at all gar  
nichts

**allow:** be allowed to dür'fen\* *mod.*  
*aux.*

**almost** *adv.* fast

**alone** *adj.* allein'

**along** *adv.* (= onward, forward) da-  
her'; (= in company with, together  
with) mit; go along (= go in com-  
pany with) mit'gehen\* *intr.* (sein);  
bring along mit'bringen\* *tr.*; come  
along (*denoting progressive motion*)  
daher'kommen\* *intr.* (sein); come  
along (= come in company with)  
mit'kommen\* *intr.* (sein)

**already** *adv.* schon

**also** *adv.* auch

**although** *subord. conj.* obgleich'

**always** *adv.* im'mer

**America** das Ame'rika

**American** der Amerika'ner (-), die  
Amerika'nerin (-nen); *adj.* ameri-  
ka'nisch

among *prep.* un'ter (*dat. or acc.*)  
 an *indef. art.* ein (ei'ne, ein)  
 and *coörd. conj.* und  
 angry *adj.* zornig  
 animal das Tier (-e)  
 Anna die Anna  
 Annie das Ann'chen  
 another (= different) *indef. pron. or adj.* ein an'd[e]rer (eine an'd[e]re, ein an'd[e]res); (= one more) *indef. adj.* noch ein (ei'ne, ein), *indef. pron.* noch ei'ner (eine, ein[e]s)  
 answer die Ant'wort (-en)  
 answer ant'worten *tr. or intr. (dat. of person)*; (a question, a letter) be-ant'worten *tr.*, ant'worten auf (*acc.*)  
 any: not any *indef. adj.* kein (kei'ne, kein; kei'ne), *indef. pron.* kei'ner (keine, kein[e]s; keine); not any more nicht mehr; not any longer nicht länger  
 anybody ir'gend je'mand *indef. pron.*  
 anything et'was (*indecl.*) *indef. pron.*; anything new etwas Neues; not anything nichts  
 apartment die Woh'nung (-en)  
 appear erschei'nen\* *intr. (sein)*; (= seem) schei'nen\* *intr.*  
 appetite der Appetit' (-e)  
 apple der Ap'fel (")  
 apple sauce das Ap'felmus  
 apply sich bewer'ben\* (*for, um acc.*)  
 appreciate schät'zen *tr.*; appreciate very much sehr hoch schätzen  
 appreciation die Dank'barkeit  
 approach sich nä'hern (*dat.*)  
 April der April' (-e)  
 arise (= get up) auf's'tehen\* *intr. (sein)*  
 arithmetic das Rech'nen

arm der Arm (-e)  
 armchair der Lehn'stuhl ("e)  
 arrest verhaften *tr.*  
 arrival die An'kunft  
 arrive an'kommen\* *intr. (sein)*  
 artist der Kün'stler (-)  
 as *subord. conj.* (= when) als; (= since, of cause) da; (= like, of man-ner) wie; as . . . as ja . . . wie (als); as soon as sobald\* *subord. conj.*; as long as solang'e *subord. conj.*; as much as soviel' or soviel wie (als) *subord. conj.*; as if als ob *subord. conj.*  
 ashamed: be ashamed sich schäm'en (*of, gen.*)  
 ask (= question) fra'gen *tr.* (about, über *acc.*); (= request) bit'ten\* *tr.* (*for, um acc.*)  
 assert behaup'ten *tr.*  
 astonished part. *adj.* erstaunt' (*at, über acc.*)  
 at *prep.* (= close by) an (*dat.*), bei (*dat.*); (= at the house of) bei (*dat.*); at the window am Fenster; at the table am Tische; at school (church) in der Schule (der Kirche); at the theater im Theater; at the railway station (post office, bank, police station, city hall, university) auf dem Bahnhof (der Post, der Bank, dem Polizeiamt, dem Rathause, der Universität); student (study) at a university Student (studieren) auf einer Universität; professor (position) at a university Professor (Stelle) an einer Universität; at Berlin in (*less frequently* zu) Berlin; at two o'clock um zwei Uhr

**attend** beſu'chen *tr.*; (= be present at) bei'wohnen *intr.* (*dat.*); **attend** to beſor'gen *tr.*

**attention**: pay close attention gut auf'paſſen *intr.* (to, auf *acc.*)

**August** der Auguſt' (-e)

**aunt** die Tan'te (-n)

**Austria** das Öſterreich

**automobile** das Automobil' (-e)

**autumn** der Herbſt (-e)

**away** *adv.* fort

**bachelor** der Jung'geſell (-en, -en)

**back** *adv.* zurück

**back**: in the back part of hin'ten in (*dat.*)

**back yard** der Hof (<sup>ne</sup>)

**bad** *adj.* ſchlecht; bad luck das Un'glück; it is too bad that es iſt [zu] ſchade, daß

**bake** back'en\* *tr.*

**baker** der Bäcker (-)

**bakery** die Bäckerei' (-en)

**ball** der Ball (<sup>ne</sup>)

**ball game** das Ball'ſpiel (-e)

**bargain** der Kauf (<sup>ne</sup>); a [good] bargain ein guter Kauf

**bark** beſ'en *intr.*

**Bauer** der Bau'er

**Baumgärtner** der Baum'gärtner

**Bavaria** das Bay'ern

**be** ſein\* *intr.* (ſein); = (become) wer'den\* *intr.* (ſein); there is (are) es iſt (ſind) *when denoting existence in a definite, limited space, es gibt when denoting existence in general, or within very broad limits; that is (i.e.)* das heißt (d. h.); **be to** ſol'len\* *mod. aux.*: I am to ich ſoll; how are you wie geht es dir;

*German has no equivalent for the progressive form: he is playing er ſpielt, the letter is being written der Brief wird geſchrieben*

**bear** (= endure) auß'ſtehen\* *tr.*

**beard** der Bart (<sup>ne</sup>); full beard der Voll'bart (<sup>ne</sup>)

**beast** das Tier (-e)

**beautiful** *adj.* ſchön

**because** *subord. conj.* weil

**become** wer'den\* *intr.* (ſein) (of, aus *dat.*)

**bed** das Bett (-en); go to bed zu Bett gehen\* (ſein)

**bedroom** das Schlaf'zimmer (-)

**beer soup** die Bier'suppe (-n)

**before** *subord. conj.* e'he; *prep.* vor (*dat. or acc.*); *adv.* zuvor

**begin** an'ſangen\* *tr. or intr.*

**behind** *prep.* hin'ter (*dat. or acc.*)

**believe** glau'ben *tr. or intr.* (*dat. of person*)

**belong** gehö'ren *intr.* (to, *dat. of person, zu dat. of thing*)

**bench** die Bank (<sup>ne</sup>)

**Berlin** das Berlin'

**Bertha** die Ber'ta

**beside** *prep.* ne'ben (*dat. or acc.*)

**besides** *prep.* au'ßer (*dat.*)

**best** *adj.* beſt; *adv.* am beſten

**betray** verra'ten\* *tr.*

**betrothed** die Braut (<sup>ne</sup>), der Bräu'tigam (-e)

**better** *adj.* beſſ'er

**between** *prep.* zwiſch'en (*dat. or acc.*)

**bicycle** das [Fahr']rad (<sup>er</sup>)

**big** *adj.* groß (<sup>er, t</sup>)

**bill** (= bank note) die Bank'note (-n)

**bind** hin'den\* *tr.*; bind fast feſt|bin-den\* *tr.* (to, an *acc.*)

bird der Vo'gel (")  
 birthday der Geburt'stag (-e)  
 bite bei'ßen\* *tr.*  
 black *adj.* schwarz ("er, "est)  
 blacksmith der [Huf']schmied (-e),  
 der [Grob']schmied (-e)  
 blacksmith shop die Schmie'de (-n)  
 bless seg'nen *tr.*  
 blind *adj.* blind  
 blockhead der Dumm'kopf ("e)  
 blue *adj.* blau  
 blush errö'ten *intr.* (sein)  
 board das Brett (-er); (= black-board) die [Wand']tafel (-n)  
 bone der Knochen (-)  
 book das Buch ("er)  
 bore (= tire) lang'weilen *tr.*  
 born *part. adj.* gebo'ren  
 borrow bor'gen *tr.*  
 Boston das Bos'ton  
 bottle die Flasch'e (-n)  
 bowed *part. adj.* gekenkt'  
 box die Kist'e (-n)  
 boy der Kna'be (-n, -n)  
 bread das Brot (-e); white bread  
 das Weiß'brot (-e); rye bread das  
 Schwarzbrot (-e), das Roggen-  
 brot (-e)  
 break (an arm, a leg) brech'en\* *tr.*;  
 (objects) zerbrech'en\* *tr.*; break to  
 pieces zerschla'gen\* *tr.*  
 breath der A'tem; draw a breath of  
 relief erleich'tert auf'atmen *intr.*  
 Bremen das Bre'men  
 brewer der Brau'er (-)  
 bridge die Brüd'le (-n)  
 bright *adj.* hell; (= intelligent) flug  
 ("er, "st)  
 bring bring'en\* *tr.*; bring along mit'|-  
 bringen\* *tr.*

broad *adj.* breit  
 brother der Bru'der (")  
 Brown der Braun  
 build bau'en *tr. or intr.*  
 building das Gebäu'de (-)  
 building block der Bau'stein (-e)  
 Burg street die Burg'straße  
 burn down nie'der|brennen\* *intr.*  
 (sein)  
 business das Geschäft' (-e); it is  
 none of his business es geht ihn  
 nichts an  
 but *coörd. conj.* a'ber (*used after*  
*either an affirmative or a negative*  
*statement with force of however*);  
 son'dern (*used only after a negative*  
*statement and introducing a propo-*  
*sition that excludes or contradicts*  
*the preceding statement*): he is not  
 rich, but poor er ist nicht reich, son-  
 dern arm; not only . . . but also  
 nicht nur . . . sondern auch  
 butcher der Flei'scher (-)  
 buy kau'fen *tr.*  
 by *prep.* (= near to) bei (*dat.*); (= by  
 the side of) ne'ben (*dat. or acc.*);  
 (of the agent) von (*dat.*); (of the  
 means) durch (*acc.*)  
 call (= cry) ru'fen\* *tr. or intr.*; (= name)  
 nen'nen\* *tr.*; be called hei'ßen\* *intr.*;  
 call out to zu'rufen\* *tr.*  
 (*dat. of person*); call for (= come  
 for, go for) ab'holen *tr.*; call on  
 (= visit) besu'chen *tr.*; call back  
 zurü'ck'rufen\* *tr.*  
 calm *adj.* ru'hig  
 can kön'nen\* *mod. aux.*  
 capture gefang'en neh'men\* *tr.*  
 car der Wa'gen (-)

**care:** take care of oneself sich in acht nehmen\*

**care:** care to mö'gen\* *mod. aux.* care for mö'gen\* *tr.*

**careful** *adj.* vor'sichtig

**carpenter** der Zim'mermann (Zim'merleute)

**carry** tra'gen\* *tr.*

**case** der Fall (<sup>ne</sup>e)

**cash:** sell only for cash nur gegen Ka'se (or gegen bar) verkauf'en *tr. or intr.*

**castle** das Schloß (Schlö'sser)

**cat** die Kat'ze (-n)

**catch** fang'en\* *tr.*; catch cold sich erkäl'ten

**Catherine** die Kathari'na

**cause:** he is the cause of it er ist schuld daran'

**cent** der Cent (- or -s) (*pronounce c as ʒ*)

**chair** der Stuhl (<sup>ne</sup>e)

**chance** die Gele'genheit (-en)

**change** än'dern *tr.*; change one's mind sich än'ders befin'nen\*; change cars um'fsteigen\* *intr.* (sein)

**chapter** das Kapitel (-)

**Charles** der Karl

**charming** *part. adj.* reizend

**chat** plau'dern *intr.*

**cheap** *adj.* bil'lig

**cheat** betrü'gen\* *tr.* (out of, um *acc.*)

**check** der Scheck (-e)

**Chicago** das Chica'go, das Chica'go (*pronounce ch as ʃ*)

**child** das Kind (-er)

**Christmas** die Weih'nachten (*pl., but used without art. w. sg. verb*)

**Christmas tree** der Weih'nachtsbaum (<sup>ne</sup>e)

**church** die Kir'che (-n); at church in der Kirche; to church in die Kirche, zur Kirche

**cigar** die Zigar're (-n)

**city** die Stadt (<sup>ne</sup>e)

**claim to** wol'len\* *mod. aux.*; he claims to have seen her er will sie gesehen haben

**Clara** die Kla'ra

**class** die Kla'sse (-n)

**clean up** auf'räumen *tr. or intr.*

**clear the throat** sich räuf'pern

**clench** (the fist) bal'ten *tr.*

**clerk** der Verkäuf'er (-)

**climb** klet'tern *intr.* (sein)

**clock** die [Wand']uhr (-en)

**close** *adj.* nah[e] (nä'her, nächst)

**close** der Schluß (Schlü'sse)

**close** (= shut) zu'machen *tr.*, schlie'ßen\* *tr.*; (= conclude) schlie'ßen\* *tr. or intr.*

**clothes** die Klei'der (*pl.*)

**cloud** die Wol'ke (-n)

**coat** der Rock (<sup>ne</sup>e)

**cobbler** der Schu'ster (-)

**coffee** der Kaf'fee (-s)

**cold** *adj.* kalt (<sup>er</sup>, <sup>est</sup>)

**cold:** catch cold sich erkäl'ten; have a cold erkäl'tet sein\*

**collar** der Kra'gen (-)

**Cologne** das Köln

**color** die Far'be (-n)

**comb** käm'men *tr.*

**come** kom'men\* *intr.* (sein); come back zurück'kommen\* *intr.* (sein), zurück'kehren *intr.* (sein); come up herauf'kommen\* *intr.* (sein); come again wie'der'kommen\* *intr.* (sein); come in herein'kommen\* *intr.* (sein)

**comfortable** *adj.* (= pleasant, cheerful) gemütlich; (= easy, convenient) bequem  
**command** befehl'en\* *tr. or intr.* (dat. of person)  
**complain** sich beklagen (about, über acc.)  
**comprehend** begreifen\* *tr.*  
**conceited** *part. adj.* ein'gebildet  
**concern** an'gehen\* *tr.*; so far as I am concerned mein'etwegen  
**concert** das Konzert' (-e); to the concert ins Konzert'  
**condescending** *part. adj.* herab'lassend  
**conductor** der Zug'führer (-)  
**confidence** das Vertrau'en (in, zu dat.)  
**consent** die Ein'willigung (-en)  
**consist** beste'hen\* *intr.* (of, aus dat.)  
**constitute** bil'den *tr.*  
**contemptuous** *adj.* verächtlich, schmäde  
**continually** *adv.* fortwäh'rend  
**continue to smoke** weiter'rauchen *intr.*  
**conversation** das Gespräch' (-e), die Unterhalt'ung (-en)  
**convince** überzeu'gen *tr.*  
**cook** die Köch'in (-nen)  
**cook** koch'en *tr. or intr.*  
**copy** (of a book) das Exemplar' (-e)  
**correct** *adj.* richtig  
**correct** forrigie'ren *tr.*  
**cost** kost'en *intr.*  
**could** (= was able to) konn'te: I could not do it yesterday ich konnte es gestern nicht tun; (= should or would be able to) könn'te: I could do it to-morrow ich könnte es morgen tun; I could have done it ich hätte es tun können

**counter** der La'dentisch (-e)  
**country** das Land ("er); in the country (not in the city) auf dem Lande; [in]to the country auf das Land  
**country girl** das Bau'ernmädchen (-)  
**course**: of course natürl'ich *adv.*  
**cousin** der Vet'ter (-n), die Cousi'ne (-n)  
**cover** deck'en *tr.*  
**cow** die Kuh ("e)  
**crazy** verrückt' *part. adj.*  
**credit** der Kredit' (-e)  
**critical** *adj.* (= serious) bedenklich  
**cross the street** über die Stra'ße ge'hen\* *intr.* (sein)  
**cunning** die List (-en)  
**cup** die Ta'sse (-n)  
**curious** *adj.* neu'gierig  
**curt** *adj.* kurz ("er, "est)  
**custom** die Sit'te (-n)  
**customer** der Kun'de (-n, -n)  
**cut** schnei'den\* *tr. or intr.*  
**damage** der Scha'den (")  
**dance** tan'zen *intr.*  
**dangerous** *adj.* gefährlich  
**dark** *adj.* dunkel  
**daughter** die Toch'ter (")  
**day** der Tag (-e); one day eines Tages; a day or two ago vor ein paar Tagen; the other day neu'lich *adv.*; that day an jenem Tage  
**day laborer** der Ta'gelöhner (-)  
**dead** *adj.* tot  
**dear** der Schatz ("e)  
**death** der Tod (To'desfälle)  
**debt** die Schuld (-en)  
**decide** sich entschlie'ßen\*, sich entschei'den\*

deep *adj.* tief  
 dentist der Zahn'arzt ("e)  
 depend (= be a question of) an'fom-  
 men\* *intr.* (sein) (on, auf *acc.*)  
 depressed *part. adj.* nie'derge'schla-  
 gen  
 deserve verdie'nen *tr.*  
 desired *part. adj.* erwünscht'  
 despise verach'ten *tr.*  
 dictionary das Wör'terbuch ("er)  
 die ster'ben\* *intr.* (sein)  
 different: entirely different from ganz  
 an'ders als  
 differently *adv.* an'ders  
 difficult *adj.* schwer, schwie'rig  
 dignity die Wür'de (-n); imperial  
 dignity die Kai'serwürde  
 dilapidated *part. adj.* zerfal'len  
 diligent *adj.* flei'ßig  
 dining car der Spei'sewagen (-)  
 dining room das Eß'zimmer (-)  
 dinner das Mit'tage'ssen (-)  
 dirty *adj.* schmut'zig; the dirty  
 youngster der kleine Schmut'zfinf  
 (*gen.* -en, *dat. and acc.* -en or -,  
*pl.* -en)  
 disinherit enter'ben *tr.*  
 distant *adj.* fern  
 disturb stö'ren *tr.*  
 divide: eight divided by four acht ge-  
 teilt' durch vier  
 do tun\* *tr.*, mach'en *tr.*; German has  
 no equivalent for the auxiliary do:  
 I do not believe it ich glaube es  
 nicht, do you believe that glaubst  
 du daß; does n't she, don't you,  
 did n't he, did he not nicht wahr;  
 do one's best sein Bestes leisten  
 doctor der Arzt ("e)  
 dog der Hund (-e)

doll die Pup'pe (-n)  
 dollar der Dollar'(-or-s); five dollars  
 fünf Dollar  
 door die Tür (-en)  
 Dorothy die Dorothe'a  
 doubt zweifel'n *intr.*  
 down *adv.* un'ten; down here hier  
 unten  
 dozen das Dutz'end (-e); six dozen  
 sechs Duzend  
 draw (= sketch) zeich'nen *tr. or intr.*;  
 (= pull) zie'hen\* *tr.*; draw forth  
 hervor'ziehen\* *tr.*  
 dream träu'men *tr. or intr.*  
 Dresden das Dres'den  
 dress das Kleid (-er)  
 dress sich an'ziehen\*; shabbily  
 dressed ärm'lich geflei'det  
 dresser (= bureau) die Kommo'de  
 (-n)  
 drink der Trunk ("e)  
 drink trinf'en\* *tr.*; drink up (= waste  
 in drink) vertrinf'en\* *tr.*  
 drive (= urge, impel) trei'ben\* *tr.*;  
 (a vehicle) fah'ren\* *tr., or intr.* (ha-  
 ben or sein); drive out (= ride out  
 in a vehicle) hinaus'fahren\* *intr.*  
 (sein); drive over (= pass over the  
 body of) überfah'ren\* *tr.*; drive  
 over (= cross) fah'ren\* *intr.* (sein)  
 über (*acc.*); drive on (= go on fur-  
 ther) wei'terfahren\* *intr.* (sein)  
 drop fal'len\* laß'en\* *tr.*  
 druggist der Apothe'fer (-)  
 drum die Trom'mel (-n)  
 drummer (= traveling salesman) der  
 Hand'lungsreisende (*adj. infl.*)  
 duchy das Herzogtum ("er)  
 dumbfounded *part. adj.* verblüfft'  
 during *prep.* wäh'rend (*gen.*)

**each** *indef. pron. or adj.* je'der (jede, jedes); **each other** *recip. pron.* ein-an'der (*indecl.*), or may be expressed by the *refl. pron. except after a prep.*

**early** *adj.* früh

**earn** verdie'nen *tr.*

**earth** die Er'de (-n); **what on earth** was in aller Welt

**easy** *adj.* (= not difficult) leicht

**eat** es'sen\* *tr. or intr.*; (of animals) fress'sen\* *tr. or intr.*

**eight** *card. num.* acht

**either** *coörd. conj.* entwe'der; not ... either auch nicht

**elect** wäh'len *tr.*

**eleven** *card. num.* elf

**Elizabeth** die Eli'sabeth

**else** *adv.* sonst; **who else** wer sonst [noch]

**embarrassed** *part. adj.* verle'gen; in an embarrassed manner verle'gen

**embrace**: in close embrace fest'um-schlungen *part. adj.*

**embrace** umar'men *tr.*

**emperor** der Kai'ser (-)

**empire** das Kai'serreich (-e); the German Empire das Deutsche Reich

**end** das En'de (-n); in the end am Ende; an untimely end ein früh'zeitiger Tod

**engine** (= locomotive) die Lokomo-ti've (-n)

**engineer** (of a locomotive) der Lokomotiv'führer (-), der Maschinist' (-en, -en)

**England** das Eng'land

**enough** genug' (*indecl.*) *indef. pron. or adj.*, genü'gend *part. adj.*

**enter** *tr.* tre'ten\* *intr.* (sein) in (*acc.*); *intr.* ein'treten\* *intr.* (sein), her-ein'treten\* *intr.* (sein)

**entire** *adj.* ganz

**entirely** *adv.* ganz, ganz und gar

**envy** benei'den *tr.*

**erase** aus'wischen *tr.*

**eraser** der Wisch'er (-)

**Ernest** der Ernst

**even** *adv.* selbst; **even if** *subord. conj.* wenn ... auch

**evening** der Abend (-e); **one evening** eines Abends; **this evening** heute abend; **late in the evening** spät abends

**ever** *adv.* (= at any time) je: that is the highest building that I have ever seen das ist das höchste Gebäude, das ich je gesehen habe; [schon ein]mal: have you ever been in Berlin sind Sie [schon ein]mal in Berlin gewesen; (= always) immer

**every** *indef. adj.* je'der (jede, jedes)

**everybody** *indef. pron.* je'dermann, ein je'der

**everything** *indef. pron.* al'les

**everywhere** *adv.* überall'

**evident** *adj.* klar

**exactly** *adv.* gera'de

**examination** die Prü'fung (-en)

**excellent** ausgezeich'net *part. adj.*

**excited** *part. adj.* aufgereg't

**exclaim** ru'fen\* *tr. or intr.*

**exercise** die Auf'gabe (-n)

**exhausted** *part. adj.* erschöp't

**exist** beste'hen\* *intr.*

**expensive** *adj.* teu'er

**experience** die Erfah'ung (-en)

**express** (regret) aus'sprechen\* *tr.*

**express train** der Schnell'zug (e)

**extravagant** *adj.* verschw'en'derisch

**eye** das Au'ge (-n)

**face** das Gesicht' (-er)  
**fail** (in an examination) durch'fallen\*  
*intr.* (sein)  
**fairly** *adv.* (=actually, veritably)  
 förmlich; my money fairly flies  
 mein Geld fliegt nur so  
**faithful** *adj.* treu  
**fall** fal'ten\* *intr.* (sein)  
**falsehood** die Un'wahrheit (-en)  
**family** die Fami'lie (-n) (*pronounce*  
*ie as je*)  
**famous** berühmt *part. adj.*  
**far** *adj.* fern; *adv.* weit  
**farm hand** der Knecht (-e)  
**fast** *adj.* schnell; be fast (of watches)  
 vor'gehen\* *intr.* (sein)  
**father** der Va'ter (")  
**favorite**: he is a general favorite er  
 ist all'gemein beliebt'  
**fear** fürch'ten *tr.*  
**February** der Fe'bruar (-e)  
**feel** füh'len *tr.*; feel well (lonesome,  
 happy) sich wohl (ein'sam, glück'-  
 lich) füh'len  
**Felix** der Fe'lix  
**fellow** der Kerl (-e), der Mensch (-en,  
 -en)  
**fence** der Zaun ("e)  
**ferry across** ü'ber'sehen *tr.*  
**few** *indef. pron. or adj.* we'nige (*pl.*);  
 a few ein paar (*indecl.*), ei'nige  
 (*pl.*)  
**fifteen** *card. num.* fünf'zehn  
**fifty** *card. num.* fünf'zig  
**finally** *adv.* end'lich  
**find** fin'den\* *tr.*  
**fine** *adj.* schön  
**fine** die Stra'ße (-n); a fine of forty  
 marks vierzig Mark Stra'ße  
**finger** der Fing'er (-)

**finger nail** der [Fing'er]nagel (")  
**finish** fer'tig wer'den\* *intr.* (sein);  
 been'digen *tr.*  
**fire** das Feu'er (-)  
**fireman** (=stoker) der Hei'zer (-)  
**firm** *adj.* fest  
**first** *ord. num.* erst; *adv.* zuerst; at  
 first zuerst  
**Fisher** der Fisch'er  
**fist** die Faust ("e)  
**five** *card. num.* fünf; five times fünf'-  
 mal *adv.*; five times five fünf mal  
 fünf  
**flag** die Fah'ne (-n)  
**flight of stairs** (steps) die Trepp'e  
 ( n)  
**floor** der [Fuß']boden (")  
**flowerpot** der Blu'mentopf ("e)  
**follow** fol'gen *intr.* (sein) (*dat.*)  
**fool** der Narr (-en, -en)  
**foot** der Fuß ("e)  
**for** *coörd. conj.* denn; *prep.* für (*acc.*);  
*rendered by the acc. without a prep.*  
*in expressions denoting time elapsed:*  
 he lived in Berlin for two years er  
 wohnte zwei Jahre in Berlin; *ren-*  
*dered either by the adv. schon and*  
*the acc. or by the prep. seit with the*  
*dat. in expressions denoting what*  
*has been and still is:* he has been  
 living in Berlin for two years er  
 wohnt schon zwei Jahre in Berlin  
 or er wohnt [schon] seit zwei Jahren  
 in Berlin; *rendered generally by*  
*auf with the acc. in expressions de-*  
*noting time to elapse:* he is going  
 to Berlin for two years er geht auf  
 zwei Jahre nach Berlin; he was  
 arrested for driving too fast er wurde  
 verhaftet, weil er zu schnell fuhr

force *zwing'en\** *tr.*; be forced to *müß=*  
*sen\** *mod. aux.*, *gezwung'en* *wer=*  
*den\** (sein) *zu*

forehead *die Stirn* (-en)

foreign *adj.* *fremd*

forest *der Wald* (*"er*)

forget *vergeß'en\** *tr.*

former: the former *je'ner* (jene, jenes;  
 jene)

formerly *adv.* *frü'her*

fortune (= wealth) *das Vermö'gen*  
 (-); good fortune *das Glück*

forty *card. num.* *vier'zig*

fountain *pen* *die Füll'feder* (-n)

four *card. num.* *vier*

France *das Frank'reich*

Frances *die Franzis'ka*

Franco-Prussian *adj.* *deutsch'-fran-*  
*zö'sisch*

Frank *der Franz*

Fred *der Fritz*

Freddy *das Fritz'chen*

Frederick *der Fried'rich*

free *adj.* *frei*

French *adj.* *franzö'sisch*

frequent *adj.* *häu'fig*

Friday *der Frei'tag* (-e)

friend *der Freund* (-e); make friends  
 with *sich befreun'den mit* (*dat.*)

friendly *adj.* *freund'lich*; in a most  
 friendly manner *aufs freundlichste*

frightful *adj.* *furcht'bar*

fro: to and fro *hin und her*

from *prep.* *von* (*dat.*)

front: in front of *vor* *prep.* (*dat. or*  
*acc.*)

front: enter (= come into) the front  
 part of vorn in (*acc.*) . . . *herein'=*  
*kommen\** (sein)

front door *die Haus'tür* (-en)

front steps *die Haus'treppe* (-n)

funeral *das Begräb'nis* (*Begräb'=*  
*nisse*)

furious *wütend* *part. adj.*; blush  
 furiously *heft'ig* *errö'ten* *intr.* (sein)

gain (= attain, achieve) *errei'chen*  
*tr.*; (in weight) *zu'nehmen\** *tr.*

garden *der Gar'ten* (*"*)

Garden street *die Gar'tenstraße*

gentleman *der Herr* (-n, -en)

George *der Georg'*

German *adj.* *deutsch*; the German  
 emperor *der Deut'sche Kai'ser*; the

German Empire *das Deut'sche Reich*

German (language) *Deutsch* (*indecl.*),  
 das Deut'sche (*adj. infl.*); (man)  
 der Deut'sche (*adj. infl.*)

Germany *das Deut'sch'land*

Gertrude *die Ger'trud*

get (= receive, obtain) *besom'men\**  
*tr.*, *erhal'ten\** *tr.*; (= fetch) *ho'len*

*tr.*; (= become) *wer'den\** *intr.*

(sein); get up (= rise) *auf'stehen\**

*intr.* (sein); get on [the train] *ein'=*

*steigen\** *intr.* (sein); get on (a par-

ticular part of the train, as the

sleeper) [*ein'*] *steigen\** *intr.* (sein)

in (*acc.*); get off [the train] *aus'=*

*steigen\** *intr.* (sein); get out [of the

train] *aus'* [*steigen\** *intr.* (sein);

get out (= bring forth, show) *her=*

*vor'* [*bringen\** *tr.*; get-along: how

are you getting along wie geht es

dir

girl *das Mäd'chen* (-)

give *ge'ben\** *tr.*; (= make a present  
 of) *schenk'en* *tr.*; give away *ver=*

*schenk'en* *tr.*; give up *auf'geben\** *tr.*

glad: be glad *sich freu'en* (of, über *acc.*)

gladly *adv.* gern (lie'ber, am lieb'sten)  
glass das Glas (Glä'ser); glasses  
(= spectacles) die Bril'le (-n)

glorious *adj.* herr'lich

gnash the teeth mit den Zäh'nen  
fnir'schen *intr.*

go ge'hen\* *intr.* (sein); go out (= leave  
the house for a walk, for a visit,  
on business; also of fire) aus'ge-  
hen\* *intr.* (sein); go out (= leave  
the room or the house, but not  
implying the act of leaving the im-  
mediate vicinity) hinaus'gehen\*  
*intr.* (sein); go along mit'gehen\*  
*intr.* (sein); go in at the front door  
zur Haus'tür hinein'gehen\* *intr.*  
(sein); go up hinauf'gehen\* *intr.*  
(sein); go away fort'gehen\* *intr.*  
(sein); after they had gone nach-  
dem sie fort waren; I am going to  
write ich werde schreiben

God der Gott (er)

good *adj.* gut (bes'ser, best); good  
weather schönes Wetter

good-natured *adj.* gut'mütig

goods die Wa'ren (*pl.*)

grand duchy das Groß'herzogtum  
(er)

grandfather der Groß'vater (er)

grandparents die Groß'eltern (*pl.*)

grant (of the Deity) ge'ben\* *tr.*

gray *adj.* grau

great *adj.* groß (er, et)

green *adj.* grün

greet grü'ßen *tr.*

grow (= become) wer'den\* *intr.*

(sein); (in size) wach'sen\* *intr.*

(sein); grow pale sich entfar'ben;

grown [up] *part. adj.* erwach'sen

gun die Flin'te (-n)

hail ha'geln *intr.*

hair das Haar (-e)

hale and hearty *adj.* fern'gesund

half *adj.* halb; half an hour eine  
halbe Stunde; half past twelve  
halb eins

half die Häl'fte (-n)

ham der Schin'ken (-)

Hamburg das Ham'burg

hand die Hand (e); second-hand *adj.*  
antiqua'risch

hand rei'chen *tr.*; hand over über-  
rei'chen *tr.* (to, dat.)

handful die Hand'voll (-)

hang häng'en *tr.*, hang'en\* *intr.*,  
häng'en\* *intr.*

happen gesche'hen\* *intr.* (sein), pas-  
sie'ren *intr.* (sein)

happy *adj.* glück'lich

hard *adj.* (= difficult) schwer, schwie-  
rig; work hard tüch'tig ar'beiten  
*intr.*

hardly *adv.* kaum

hat der Hut (e); high hat der Zylin-  
der (-)

hate ha'ssen *tr.*

have ha'ben\* *tr.*; as *aux. of the perf.*  
*tenses* ha'ben\*, (with *intr. verbs*  
*of motion and transition*) sein\*;  
have to müß'sen\* *mod. aux.*; have on  
(a dress, suit, coat) an'haben\* *tr.*;  
have on (a hat) auf'haben\* *tr.*; have  
off (= have free) frei ha'ben\* *tr.*

he *pers. pron.* er (sei'ner, ihm, ihn);

he who *rel. pron.* (wes'sen, wem,  
wen)

head der Kopf (e), das Haupt (er)

headache die Kopf'schmerzen (*pl.*);

have a headache Kopf'schmerzen  
ha'ben\*

hear hö'ren *tr. or intr.* (of, von *dat.*)

hearing: hard of hearing [chwer'hörig

hearty *adj.* herz'lich; (of eating) tüch'tig

heave (a sigh) aus'stoßen\* *tr.*

help die Hil'fe

help hel'fen\* *intr.* (*dat.*); I cannot

help it ich kann es nicht än'dern

helpful *adj.* nützlich

henpecked: be henpecked unter dem Pantoffel (= slipper) ste'hen\* *intr.*

Henry der Hein'rich

her *poss. adj.* ihr (ih're, ihr; ih're)

her *pers. pron.* ihr (*dat.*), sie (*acc.*); she has no money with her sie hat kein Geld bei sich

here *adv.* hier; come here kommt mal her

hereditary *adj.* erb'lich

Herman der Her'mann

hero der Held (-en, -en)

heroine die Hel'din (-nen)

hers *poss. pron.* ih'rer (ihre, ihres; ihre), der ih're (die ihre, das ihre; die ihren), der ih'rige (die ihrige, das ihrige; die ihrigen)

herself *refl. pron.* sich (*indecl.*); *intensive pron.* selbst (*indecl.*), selber (*indecl.*)

hesitate zög'ern *intr.*

hide verber'gen\* *tr.*

high *adj.* hoch, when inflected hoch- (hö'her, höchst)

highly *adv.* höchst, sehr

him *pers. pron.* ihn (*dat.*), ihn (*acc.*)

himself *refl. pron.* sich (*indecl.*); *intensive pron.* selbst (*indecl.*), selber (*indecl.*)

hire oneself out die'nen *intr.*

his *poss. adj.* sein (sei'ne, sein; sei'ne)

his *poss. pron.* sei'ner (seine, sein[e]s; seine), der sei'ne (die seine, das seine; die seinen), der sei'nige (die seinige, das seinige; die seinigen); *in pred. expressing ownership simply* sein (*indecl.*)

Hoffmann der Hoff'mann

hold hal'ten\* *tr.*; hold out to hin'tei-chen *tr.* (*dat. of person*); hold up (a train) überfal'len\* *tr.*

holy *adj.* hei'lig

home: at home zu Hau'se; go home nach Hau'se ge'hen\* (sein)

honest *adj.* ehr'lich

honeymoon die Glit'terwochen (*pl.*)

honor die Eh're (-n); do honor Eh're an'tun\* (to, *dat.*)

hope hof'en *tr.*; I hope he will soon come hof'entlich (*adv.*) kommt er bald

horse das Pferd (-e)

horse dealer der Pfer'dehändler (-)

hot *adj.* heiß; hotter and hotter im=mer hei'ßer

hour die Stun'de (-n); for hours stun'denlang

house das Haus (Häu'ser); (= dwell-ing) die Woh'nung (-en)

how *adv. or subord. conj.* wie; how much wieviel; how many wie vie'le

however *coörd. conj.* a'ber; however that may be wie dem auch sein mag

Hugh der Hu'go

humor (= temper) die Lau'ne (-n)

hundred *card. num.* hun'dert; a hundred hun'dert; two hundred zwei=hun'dert

**hungry** *adj.* hung'rig  
**hurry** die Eile  
**hurry**: hurry [up] sich beeilen;  
 hurry after nach'eilen *intr.* (sein)  
 (dat.)  
**husband** der Mann (er)

**I** *pers. pron.* ich (mei'ner, mir, mich)  
**i.e.** d. h. (= das heißt)  
**if** *subord. conj.* wenn; (= whether)  
 ob; even if wenn . . . auch; as if  
 als ob

**immediately** *adv.* sogleich'  
**impossibility** die Unmög'lichkeit  
 (-en); an absolute impossibility die  
 reine Unmög'lichkeit  
**impossible** *adj.* unmög'lich  
**impression** der Ein'druck (e); make  
 an impression upon einen Ein'druck  
 machen auf (*acc.*)

**impudence** die Un'verschämtheit  
 (-en); such a piece of impudence  
 so eine Un'verschämtheit

**impudent** un'verschämt *part. adj.*

**in** *prep.* in (*dat. or acc.*)

**incident** der Vor'fall (e)

**indeed**: yes, indeed jawohl' *adv.*

**indignant** empört' *part. adj.*; highly  
 indignant äu'ßerst empört'

**industrious** *adj.* flei'ßig

**inform** mit'teilen *tr.* (*dat. of person*)

**information** die Aus'kunft (e)

**injure** (= wound) verleh'en *tr.*

**inquire** sich erkun'digen (about, nach  
 dat.)

**inst.** d. M. (= dieses Monats)

**intend to** wol'len\* *mod. aux.*

**interest**: take interest in sich inter-  
 esse'en für (*acc.*)

**interesting** *part. adj.* interess'ant'

**interfere** (of things) dazwisch'en/-  
 kommen\* *intr.* (sein)

**interrupt** unterbrech'en\* *tr.*

**into** *prep.* in (*acc.*)

**intoxicated** *part. adj.* berauscht'

**invite** ein'laden\* *tr.*

**Irishman** der Ir'länder (-)

**irritated** *part. adj.* gereizt'

**it** *pers. pron.* es (sei'ner, ihm, es), er  
 (sei'ner, ihm, ihn), sie (ih'rer, ihr,  
 sie)

**Italy** das Ita'lien (*pronounce* ien as  
 jen)

**its** *poss. adj.* sein (sei'ne, sein; sei'ne),  
 ihr (ih're, ihr; ih're)

**itself** *refl. pron.* sich (*indecl.*); *inten-*  
*sive pron.* selbst (*indecl.*), sel'ber  
 (*indecl.*)

**Jack** der Hans

**jail** das Gefäng'nis (Gefäng'nisse);  
 put in jail ein'sperren *tr.*

**janitor** der Haus'mann (er)

**jealous** *adj.* ei'fersüchtig

**jerk open** auf'reißen\* *tr.*

**jewelry** die Juwe'len (*pl.*)

**Johanna** die Johan'na

**John** der Johann'

**join in** (a song) ein'stimmen *intr.*

**Joseph** der Jo'seph, der Jo'sef

**joyous** *adj.* freu'dig

**July** der Ju'li (-s)

**jump** spring'en\* *intr.* (sein); jump up  
 auf'springen\* *intr.* (sein)

**June** der Ju'ni (-s)

**just** *adv.* e'ben, gera'de; (= just  
 now, a minute ago) so'e'ben; (*with*  
*imperative*) nur, [ein]mal'; just  
 as gera'de als *subord. conj.*

**justly** *adv.* mit Recht

Kaiser street die Kai'serſtraße  
 keep (= retain) behal'ten\* *tr.*; keep  
 on (= continue) fort'fahren\* *intr.*  
 kid glove der Glacé'handſchuh (-e)  
 (*pronounce glaſſe'*-)  
 kilometer daſſ (or der) Kilome'ter  
 (-)  
 kind: what kind of waſ für ein; (*be-  
 fore pl. nouns, and generally before  
 abstracts and nouns denoting ma-  
 terial*) waſ für  
 kindness die Gü'te  
 king der Kö'nig (-e)  
 King street die Kö'nigſtraße  
 kingdom daſſ Kö'nigreich (-e)  
 kiss küſſ'en *tr.*  
 kitchen die Küch'e (-n)  
 knife daſſ Meſſ'er (-)  
 know (facts) wiſſ'en\* *tr.* (about, von  
*dat.*); (persons or things) ken'nen\*  
*tr.*; before he knew it e'he er ſich's  
 verſah'  
 Krause der Krau'se  
 lady die Da'me (-n)  
 lame *adj.* lahm  
 lamp die Lam'pe (-n)  
 landlady die Wir'tin (-nen)  
 language die Spra'che (-n)  
 lantern die Later'ne (-n)  
 large *adj.* groß (<sup>er</sup>, <sup>st</sup>)  
 last *adj.* leht; (= preceding) vo'rig,  
 leht; at last end'lich *adv.*  
 late *adj.* ſpät; be late zu ſpät kom'-  
 men\* *intr.* (ſein)  
 lately *adv.* kürz'lich  
 latter: the latter die'ser (dieſe, dieſe  
 ſeß; dieſe)  
 laugh lach'en *intr.*  
 lawyer der Advokat' (-en, -en)

lay le'gen *tr.*; lay aside beiſei'te|legen  
*tr.*  
 lazy *adj.* faul  
 lead füh'ren *tr.*; lead aside beiſci'te|=  
 führen *tr.*  
 learn ler'nen *tr. or intr.*; (= hear)  
 erfah'ren\* *tr.*  
 leave laſſ'en\* *tr.*; (= quit) verlaſſ'en\*  
*tr.*; (= depart on a trip) ab'reiſen  
*intr.* (ſein) (for, nach *dat.*); (= start,  
 of trains) ab'fahren\* *intr.* (ſein);  
 (= take one's leave) ſich verab'=  
 ſchieden  
 left (= left over) ü'brig *adj.*  
 Leipzig daſſ Leip'zig  
 lend lei'hen\* *tr.*  
 Leo der Le'o  
 Lessing der Leſſ'ing  
 lesson die Auf'gabe (-n)  
 let laſſ'en\* *tr.*; frequently to be ren-  
 dered by the subj., as let him not for-  
 get to be here again at nine o'clock  
 er vergeſſe nicht um neun Uhr wie-  
 der da zu ſein, let us go home gehen  
 wir nach Hauſe or laß (laßt, laſſen  
 Sie) uns nach Hauſe gehen; let  
 have (= sell) laſſ'en\* *tr.*: can you  
 not let me have it cheaper können  
 Sie es mir nicht billiger laſſen  
 letter (epistle) der Brief (-e); (of the  
 alphabet) der Buch'ſtabe (-n, -n)  
 letter carrier der Brief'träger (-)  
 lie lie'gen\* *intr.*; (= tell a false-  
 hood) lü'gen\* *intr.*; lie down ſich  
 le'gen  
 life daſſ Le'ben (-)  
 light daſſ Licht (-er)  
 light an'zünden *tr.*  
 lighten (= make less heavy) erleich'te-  
 tern *tr.*; it is lightening es blißt

like *subord. conj.* wie

like or like to mö'gen\* *tr. or mod.*

*aux.*, gern *with an appropriate*

*verb*; I like him very much ich mag

ihn sehr gern or ich habe ihn sehr

gern; I don't like him ich mag ihn

nicht; I like to work ich arbeite

gern; do you like peas essen Sie

gern Erbsen; I should like to go

ich möchte gern gehen; (= be

pleased with) gefal'len\* *intr.*;

how do you like it here wie gefällt'

es Ihnen hier

likely *adv.* wahr'schein'lich; most

likely höchstwahrschein'lich

listen (= pay attention) zu'hören

*intr. (to, dat.)*

little *adj.* (= small) klein; (of quan-

tity) we'nig; a little ein we'nig,

ein biß'chen, et'was

live (= be alive) le'ben *intr.*;

(= dwell) woh'nen *intr.*

lively *adj.* leb'haft

living das Le'ben

loaf der Laib (-e)

lock zu'fchließen\* *tr.*

lonely *adj.* ein'sam

long *adj.* lang ("er, "ft); *adv.* (of

time) lang'e, sometimes lang, as

lang lebe der König; as long as

solang'e *subord. conj.*; no longer

(= not any more) nicht mehr

look der Blick (-e)

look (= appear) auß'fsehen\* *intr.*;

look at an'fsehen\* *tr.*; look at (= ex-

amine) sich (dat.) an'fsehen\* *tr.*;

look out (of a window) hinaus'fse-

hen\* *intr.*; look for su'chen *tr.*

lose verlie'ren\* *tr.*; lose one's way

sich verir'ren

lot: a lot of viel *indef. adj. usually*

*indecl. in the sg.*

loud *adj.* laut

Louise die Lui'se

love die Lie'be

love lie'ben *tr. or intr.*

Lübeck das Lü'beck

luck das Glück; bad luck das Un'glück

lucky: it is lucky that es ist ein Glück,

daß

Ludwig street die Lud'wigstraße

ma'am: please, ma'am bitte, gnä'dige

Frau

macaroni factory die Maffaro'ni-

fabrik (-en)

mad *adj.* bö'se

madam die Mada'me (*silent e*) (-n)

mail auf die Post bring'en\* *tr.*

maintain (= claim) behaup'ten *tr.*

make mach'en *tr.*

man (= male) der Mann ("er); (=

human being) der Mensch (-en, -en)

manufacturer der Fabrikant' (-en,

-en)

many *indef. pron. or adj.* vie'le (*pl.*)

mark die Mark (-) (worth about 24

cents); ten marks zehn Mark; two

marks and ten pfennigs M 2.10

(*read* zwei Mark zehn)

married couple das Ehepaar (-e)

marry *tr.* hei'raten; *intr.* sich verhei'-

raten; get married sich verhei'raten;

married verhei'ratet

Martha die Mar'tha

Mary die Marie'

mask die Mas'ke (-n)

master (= owner, lord) der Herr

(-n, -en)

match das Streich'holz ("er)

**mathematician** der Mathema'tiker (-)

**mathematics** die Mathematik'; in  
mathematics in der Mathematik'

**matter**: what is the matter with him  
was fehlt ihm; what's the matter  
was ist denn los

**Max** der Max

**May** der Mai (-e[n])

**may** (= be permitted to) dür'fen\*  
*mod. aux.*; (expressing possibility,  
probability, plausibility) mö'gen\*  
*mod. aux.*, kön'nen\* *mod. aux.*;  
*sometimes to be rendered by the subj.,*  
*as long may he live* er lebe hoch

**me** *pers. pron.* mir (*dat.*), mich (*acc.*)

**mean** *adj.* schlecht

**mean** mei'nen *tr.*; (= signify) be-  
deu'ten *tr.*; do you mean to say  
that I did that ich hätte das getan?

**measles** die Ma'sern (*pl.*)

**meat** das Fleisch

**medicine** die Medizin' (-en) (*with-*  
*out pl. in sense of medical science*)

**meet** (by chance) begeg'nen *intr.*  
(sein) (*dat.*), tref'fen\* *tr.*; (by ap-  
pointment) tref'fen\* *tr.*; (= be-  
come acquainted with) ken'nen\*  
ler'nen

**melody** die Melodie' (Melodi'en)

**merchant** der Kauf'mann (Kauf'-  
leute)

**Meyer** der Mey'er

**midst** mit'ten *adv.*; in the midst of  
mitten in (*dat. or acc.*)

**milk** die Milch

**Miller** der Mü'ller

**million** die Million' (-en) (*pronounce*  
*ion as ion*)

**mine** *poss. pron.* mei'ner (meine,  
mein[e]s; meine), der mei'ne (die

meine, daß meine; die meinen),  
der mei'nige (die meinige, daß mei-  
nige; die meinigen); *in pred. ex-*  
*pressing ownership simply* mein  
(*indecl.*)

**Minna** die Min'na

**minute** die Minu'te (-n); twenty  
minutes past one zwanzig Minu'ten  
nach eins; ten minutes of nine zehn  
Minu'ten vor neun

**mirror** der Spie'gel (-)

**mislay** verle'gen *tr.*

**Miss** das Fräu'lein (-); Miss Smith  
Fräu'lein Schmidt

**miss** (a train) verpaß'en *tr.*, versäu'-  
men *tr.*; (= feel the lack of) ver-  
miß'en *tr.*

**mistake** der Feh'ler (-); make a mis-  
take in writing sich verschrei'ben\*

**mistress** die Her'in (-nen)

**misunderstand** nicht rich'tig verste'-  
hen\* *tr.*, falsch verste'hen\* *tr.*

**modern** *adj.* modern'

**moist** *adj.* feucht

**moment** der Augenblick (-e)

**money** das Geld (-er)

**Montgomery** (city) das Montgom'ery

**month** der Mo'nat (-e)

**more** mehr (*indecl.*) *indef. pron. or*  
*adj.*; *rendered by the suffix -er*  
*when indicating the comparative*  
*degree of adjectives or adverbs*: more  
beautiful schöner; (= in addition)  
noch: I need two more ich brauche  
noch zwei, once more noch einmal;  
*but in comparisons and negative*  
*sentences* mehr: two more than zwei  
mehr als, not any more nicht mehr,  
no more cigars keine Zigar'en mehr:  
more and more immer mehr

**morning** der Mor'gen (-); this morn-  
ing heu'te mor'gen  
**mortal** *adj.* sterb'lich  
**mother** die Mut'er (")  
**motion** die Bewe'gung (-en); he  
made no motion to do it er machte  
keine An'stalt es zu tun  
**mount** bestei'gen\* *tr.*  
**mountain** der Berg (-e); mountains  
(= mountain range) das Ge-  
bir'ge (-)  
**mouse** die Maus ("e)  
**mouth** der Mund (-e)  
**move** *tr.* bewe'gen; *intr.* sich bewe'-  
gen; (= change one's residence)  
zie'hen\* *intr.* (sein)  
**Mr.** der Herr (-n, -en); Mr. Smith  
Herr Schmidt  
**Mrs.** die Frau (-en); Mrs. Smith  
Frau Schmidt  
**much** *indef. pron. or adj.* viel  
**Munich** das Mün'chen  
**must** müs'sen\* *mod. aux.*; must not  
(= be not allowed to) nicht dür'en\*  
*mod. aux.*  
**mustache** der Schnurr'bart ("e)  
**my** *poss. adj.* mein (mei'ne, mein;  
mei'ne); *interj.* a'ber  
**myself** *refl. pron.* mir (*dat.*), mich  
*acc.*; *intensive pron.* selbst (*indecl.*),  
sel'ber (*indecl.*)  
**Nagel** der Na'gel  
**name** der Na'me (-ns, -n); his  
name is er hei'ßt  
**named**: a son named Jack ein Sohn  
na'mens Hans  
**narrow** *adj.* eng  
**nation** die Nation' (-en) (*pronounce*  
natsj'on')

**national**: national song das National'-  
lied (-er) (*pronounce* natsjo-  
nal'-); national anthem die Na-  
tional'hymne (-n) (*pronounce*  
natsjonal'-)  
**native city** die Ba'terstadt ("e)  
**near** *prep.* in der Nä'he (*zw. gen.*);  
I am not near through ich bin noch  
lange nicht fertig  
**necktie** die Krawat'te (-n)  
**need** brau'chen *tr.*  
**neglect** vernach'lässigen *tr.*  
**neighbor** der Nach'bar (-n), die  
Nach'barin (-nen)  
**neighborhood** die Nach'barschaft (-en)  
**neither** *coörd. conj.* we'der  
**never** *adv.* nie  
**nevertheless** *adv.* tro'ßdem'  
**new** *adj.* neu  
**news** die Nach'richt (-en); any news  
et'was Neu'es  
**New York** das Newyork', das  
New York  
**next** *adj.* nächst  
**nice** *adj.* schön  
**night** die Nacht ("e); last night  
gest'ern nacht; last night (= yes-  
terday evening) gest'ern a'bend  
**nine** *card. num.* neun  
**ninety** *card. num.* neun'zig  
**ninety-nine** *card. num.* neunund-  
neun'zig  
**ninth** (= ninth part) das Neun'tel (-)  
**no** *indef. adj.* kein (fei'ne, kein; fei'ne)  
**no** *adv.* nein  
**noble** *adj.* e'del; (of birth) a'delig or  
ad'lig  
**nobody** *indef. pron.* nie'mand  
**none** *indef. pron.* kei'ner (keine,  
kein[c]s; keine)

noodle factory die Nu'delfabrik  
(-en)

nor *coörd. conj.* noch

nose die Na'se (-n)

not *adv.* nicht; not yet noch nicht;  
not at all gar nicht; not a fein  
(fei'ne, fein)

notebook das Notiz'buch ("er)

nothing *indef. pron.* nichts (*indecl.*);  
nothing new nichts Neu'es; nothing  
at all gar nichts

notice bemer'fen *tr.*

novel der Roman' (-e)

now *adv.* jetzt, nun

obey gehor'den *intr.* (*dat.*)

obliging *adj.* gefäl'lig, zuvor'kom-  
mend

obtain erhal'ten\* *tr.*

occasion die Gele'genheit (-en)

occasionally *adv.* zuwei'len

occur (= come to one's mind) ein'|-  
fallen\* *intr.* (sein); it occurred to  
me es fiel mir ein

o'clock Uhr; at two o'clock um zwei  
Uhr

of *prep.* generally expressed by the  
*gen. case of the noun*; von (*dat.*);  
ten minutes of two zehn Minu-  
ten vor zwei; on the tenth of July  
am zehnten Juli; the University  
of Berlin die Universität Berlin';  
the city of Leipzig die Stadt Leip-  
zig; a glass of water ein Glas  
Wasser; king of Prussia Kö'nig von  
Preu'sen

offer an'|-bieten\* *tr.*

often *adv.* oft ("er, am "esten)

oh *interj.* ach

old *adj.* alt ("er, "est)

on *prep.* (= on top of) auf (*dat. or  
acc.*); (= on the side of) an (*dat.  
or acc.*); (*denoting time when*) an  
(*dat.*); on Kaiser street in der Kai-  
serstraße

once *adv.* (= one time as contrasted  
with two times, three times, etc.)  
ein'mal; (= once upon a time) ein-  
mal'; at once sofort', sogleich'; once  
in a while dann und wann; all at  
once auf ein'mal

one *card. num. adj.* ein (ei'ne, ein),  
*pron.* ei'ner (eine, ein[e]s); *indef.  
pron.* man (*dat.* ei'nem, *acc.* ei'nen);  
*not translated after adjectives*: the  
large boy and the small one der  
große Knabe und der kleine; this  
one die'ser (dicke, dieses); that one  
je'ner (jene, jenes), der (die, das);  
each one je'der (jede, jedes); which  
one wel'cher (welche, welches; wel-  
che)

only *adj.* ein'zig; *adv.* nur, (= not  
yet more than) erst

open *adj.* of'fen

open auf'machen *tr.*, öff'nen *tr.*; auf'|-  
gehen\* *intr.* (sein)

opera die D'per (-n)

opinion die Mei'nung (-en); be of  
the opinion der Meinung sein\*

opposite gegenü'ber *prep.* (*dat.*) *often  
follows the governed word, especially  
in case of a pronoun object*

or *coörd. conj.* o'der

order: put in order (a room) auf'|-  
räumen *tr.*; in order to um . . . zu

order (= command) befeh'len\* *tr.*  
(*dat. of person*); (= give an order  
for) bestel'len *tr.*; (= prescribe)  
verord'nen *tr.* (for, *dat.*)

Oscar der Os'kar

other (= different) an'der *indef. pron.*  
or *adj.*; (= additional) noch *adv.*;  
the other day neu'lich *adv.*; each  
other *recip. pron.* einan'der (*in-*  
*decl.*), or may be rendered by the  
*refl. pron. except after a prep.*

otherwise *adv.* (= else) sonst; (=  
differently) an'ders

ought to *past or pluperf. subj. of sol'*  
len\* *mod. aux.:* I ought to go ich  
sollte gehen, I ought to have gone  
ich hätte gehen sollen

our *poss. adj.* un'ser (un[s][e]re, unser;  
un[s][e]re)

ours *poss. pron.* un's[er]er (un[s][e]re,  
un[s][e]res; un[s][e]re), der un's[er]e  
(die un[s][e]re, das un[s][e]re; die  
un[s][e]ren), der un'srige (die un's-  
rige, das un'srige; die un'srigen);  
*in pred. expressing ownership sim-*  
*ply un'ser (indecl.)*

out: out of auß *prep. (dat.)*; while I  
was out wäh'rend meiner Abwe-  
senheit

outgrow entwach'sen\* *intr. (sein)*  
(*dat.*)

outing der Aus'flug ("e); take an  
outing einen Aus'flug machen

outrage (= disgrace) die Schan'de  
over *prep.* ü'ber (*dat. or acc.*); *adv.*  
(= past) vorü'ber; over there dort  
drü'ben

overcoat der Ü'berrock ("e)

overpower überwäl'tigen *tr.*

oversleep oneself sich verschla'fen\*

overturn um'werfen\* *tr.*

owe schul'den *tr. (dat. of person)*

own *adj.* ei'gen

own besitz'en\* *tr.*

pair das Paar (-e)

palace der Pala'st ("e)

pale *adj.* blaß, bleich; grow pale sich  
entfär'ben

pancake der Pfann'kuchen (-)

paper das Papier' (-e); (= news-  
paper) die Zeit'ung (-en)

parents die El'tern (*pl.*)

Paris das Paris'

park der Park (-e)

part der Teil (-e)

particular: nothing in particular  
nichts Beson'deres

pass (an examination) glück'lich be-  
ste'hen\* *tr.*; pass by (= go past)  
vorbei'gehen\* *intr. (sein)* (an  
*w. dat. of object passed*); pass by  
(= drive past) vorbei'fahren\*  
*intr. (sein)* (an *w. dat. of object*  
*passed*); pass on weiter'gehen\*  
*intr. (sein)*; pass off ab'gehen\*  
*intr. (sein)*

passage (= sentence, paragraph)  
die Stel'le (-n)

passenger der Passagier' (-e) (*pro-*  
*nounce g as English z in azure*)

past: half past six halb sie'ben

patient *adj.* gedul'dig

Paul der Paul

Paula die Pau'la

pay bezah'len *tr. or intr.*; pay back  
zurück'bezahlen *tr.*

peace der Frie'den

peasant der Bau'er (-s or -n, -n)

pen die Fe'der (-n)

pencil der Blei'stift (-e)

penny der Pfen'nig (- or -e) (worth  
 $\frac{1}{4}$  cent); ten pennies zehn Pfennig  
(= sum of ten pennies), zehn  
Pfennige (= ten penny-pieces)

people (= persons) die Leute (*pl.*);  
(= nation) das Volk (*"er*)

perhaps *adv.* vielleicht

permit: be permitted to dürfen\*  
*mod. aux.*

personal *adj.* persönlich

pfennig der Pfennig (-*or*-e) (worth  
 $\frac{1}{4}$  cent); ten pfennigs zehn Pfennig  
(= sum of ten pfennigs), zehn  
Pfennige (= ten pfennig-pieces)

physician der Arzt (*"e*)

piano das Klavier' (-e) (*pronounce*  
*v as w*)

pick out (= select) aus'suchen *tr.*

picture das Bild (-er)

piece das Stück (-e); break to pieces  
zer'schla'gen\* *tr.*; shoot to pieces  
zer'schie'ßen\* *tr.*

piercing *part. adj.* gel'end

pipe die Pfei'fe (-n)

pity: to be pitied bedau'ernswert *adj.*

place die Stel'le (-n); in my place  
(= stand) an meiner Stelle

place stel'len *tr.*

plate der Tel'ler (-)

platform (of a railway station) der  
Bahn'steig (-e)

play spie'len *tr. or intr.*

pleasant *adj.* an'genehm

please (= suit) gefal'len\* *intr. (dat.)*;  
*interj.* bit'te: please be seated bitte,  
nehmen Sie Plaß; be pleased with  
(= be glad about) sich freu'en über  
(*acc.*); be pleased with (= be sat-  
isfied with) zufried'en sein\* mit  
(*dat.*)

pocket die Tasch'e (-n)

poem das Gedicht' (-e)

poison das Gift (-e)

poison vergif'ten *tr.*

poke: a slow poke eine lang'same  
Tri'ne (*abbrev. of* Kathari'ne Cath-  
erine)

police station das Polizei'amt (*"er*)

policeman der Schut'zmann (*"er*)

polished: highly polished *part. adj.*  
hoch'poliert

poor *adj.* arm (*"er, "ft*); a poor neigh-  
borhood eine ärm'liche Nach'bar-  
schaft

pork das Schwei'nefleisch

position die Stel'le (-n)

possible *adj.* mög'lich

post office die Post; at the post  
office auf der Post; to the post office  
auf die Post

postal card die Post'karte (-n)

potato die Kartof'fel (-n); mashed  
potatoes der Kartof'felbrei

pound das Pfund (-e)

praise lob'en *tr.*

prefer vor'ziehen\* *tr.*, lie'ber (*adv.*,  
*compar. of* gern) with an appro-  
priate verb: I prefer to live in the  
city ich wohne lieber in der Stadt

prepare (lessons) mach'en *tr.*; pre-  
pare oneself for the worst sich auf  
das schlimm'ste gefaßt' machen

prescribe (medicine) verschrei'ben\*  
*tr. (for, dat.)*

presence die Ge'genwart

present an'wesend *part. adj.*; (of  
time) jet'zig; be present at bei'z  
wohnen *intr. (dat.)*

present (= gift) das Geschen't' (-e)

president der Präsi'dent' (-en, -en)

pretty *adj.* hübsch, schön

principality das Für'stentum (*"er*)

probably *adv.* wohl

proclaim aus'ru'fen\* *tr.*

progress der Fort'schritt (-e)  
 proper: be proper sich schick'en  
 propose vor'schlagen\* *tr.* (to, *dat.*)  
 proud *adj.* stolz (of, auf *acc.*)  
 prove beweisen\* *tr.*  
 provoking: that is provoking das ist  
 zu dumm

Prussia das Preu'ßen  
 public school die Volks'schule (-n)  
 punish strafen *tr.*  
 pupil der Schü'ler (-)  
 put (= make stand) stel'len *tr.*; (a  
 question) stel'len *tr.*, rich'ten *tr.* (to,  
 an *acc.*); put on (an overcoat, coat,  
 dress, glove, shoe) an'ziehen\* *tr.*;  
 put on (a hat, spectacles) auf'setzen  
*tr.*; put back (= stick back) wie's  
 der steck'en *tr.*

quarrel sich zank'en  
 quarter das Bier'tel (-); a quarter  
 past two ein Viertel [auf] drei *or*  
 ein Viertel nach zwei; a quarter of  
 seven drei Viertel [auf] sieben *or*  
 ein Viertel vor sieben

question die Fra'ge (-n)  
 questioning *part. adj.* fra'gend  
 quick *adj.* schnell, rasch  
 quiet: as quiet as a mouse mäus'-  
 chenstill *adj.*

quit smoking das Rau'chen auf'-  
 geben\*  
 quite *adv.* ganz

rail die Schie'ne (-n)  
 railway station der Bahn'hof ("e)  
 rain reg'nen *impers.*  
 rather *adv.* (= somewhat) ziem'lich,  
 et'was  
 razor das Rasier'messer (-)

read le'sen\* *tr. or intr.*; read on wei's  
 ter/lesen\* *tr. or intr.*

ready *adj.* fer'tig  
 really *adv.* wirk'lich; (= properly  
 speaking) ei'gentlich  
 reason der Grund ("e)  
 receive bekom'men\* *tr.*, erhal'ten\*  
*tr.*

recently *adv.* vor kurzem  
 recognize erken'nen\* *tr.*  
 recommend empfeh'len\* *tr.*  
 recommendation: letter of recom-  
 mendation der Empfeh'lungsbrief  
 (-e)

red *adj.* rot ("er, "est)  
 reflect (= think) sich besin'nen\*  
 refresh erfris'chen *tr.*  
 regard: give him my regards grü'ße  
 ihn von mir

regard (= look at) betrach'ten *tr.*  
 regret das Bedau'ern  
 regret bedau'ern *tr.*  
 reign regie'ren *tr. or intr.*  
 Reinhardt der Rein'hardt  
 relate erzäh'len *tr. or intr.*  
 related *part. adj.* verwandt' (to, mit  
*dat.*)

reliable *adj.* zu'verlä'ssig  
 relieved *part. adj.* erleich'tert  
 rely sich verlas'sen\* (on, auf *acc.*)  
 remain blei'ben\* *intr.* (sein); (at the  
 close of letters) [ver]blei'ben\* *intr.*  
 (sein)

remaining ü'brig *adj.*  
 remember sich erin'nern (*gen.*)  
 remind erin'nern *tr.* (of, an *acc.*); he  
 reminds me that er erinnert mich  
 [daran], daß  
 rent die Mie'te  
 repeat wiederho'len *tr.*

reply ant'worten *tr. or intr.*, erwi-  
dern *tr.*

reproachful *adj.* vor'wurfsvoll

republic die Republik' (-en)

reputation: have the reputation of  
being gel'ten\* für (*acc.*)

rest ru'hen *intr.*

return zurück'kehren *intr.* (sein)

rich *adj.* reich

rid befrei'en *tr.* (of, von *dat.*)

right das Recht (-e); be right recht  
ha'ben\*

right away *adv.* gleich

rightly *adv.* mit Recht

rise (of the sun) auf'gehen\* *intr.*  
(sein)

river der Fluß (Flüß'e)

roadside: by the roadside am Wege

robber der Räuber (-)

rocking-horse das Schau'selpferd (-e)

roll die Rol'le (-n); (bread) das  
Bröt'chen (-)

Roman *adj.* rö'misch

room das Zim'mer (-)

rub rei'ben\* *tr. or intr.*; rub the eyes  
sich (*dat.*) die Augen rei'ben\*

Rudolph der Ru'dolf

run lau'fen\* *intr.* (sein); run down  
(of clocks) ab'laufen\* *intr.* (sein);

run over (= drive over the body of)

überfah'ren\* *tr.*; run up hinauf'z-

laufen\* *intr.* (sein); run the hand

through the hair sich (*dat.*) mit der

Hand durch das Haar fah'ren\* *intr.*

(sein); run after nach'springen\*

*intr.* (sein) (*dat.*); run out hinaus'z-

laufen\* *intr.* (sein)

rush stür'zen *intr.* (sein)

Russia das Ruß'land

rye flour das Rog'genmehl

sad *adj.* trau'rig

safe *adj.* sich'er; (of a journey)  
glück'lich

sailor der Matro'se (-n, -n)

St. Louis St. (= Sanct) Lou'is

sake: for the sake of um . . . wil'en  
*prep.* (*gen.*); for your father's sake

um dei'nes Va'ters wil'en; for your

sake um dei'netwillen; for good-

ness' sake um Him'mels wil'en

same: the same *dem. pron. or adj.*  
dersel'be (dieselbe, dasselbe; die-

selben); the same thing dassel'be

San Francisco das San Franzis'co,  
das San Francis'co

Santa Claus das Christ'kind[chen]  
(*pronounce initial Ch as K*), der

Weih'nachtsmann

sarcastic *adj.* sarkast'isch, spöt'tisch

satisfied zufried'en *adj.*

Saturday der Sonn'abend (-e)

saucer die Un'tertasse (-n)

sauerkraut das Sau'erkraut

save (trouble) erspa'ren *tr.* (*dat. of*  
*person*); (money) spa'ren *tr.*;

(=rescue) ret'en *tr.*

Saxony das Sach'sen

say sa'gen *tr.*; be said to sol'en\* *mod.*  
*aux.*: he is said to be rich er soll

reich sein

scare erschreck'en *tr.*

Scheffel der Schef'fel

Scherer der Sch'er'er

Schiller der Schil'ler

Schneider der Schnei'der

school die Schu'le (-n); at school in  
der Schule; to school zur Schule,

in die Schule; stay in after school

nach'sitzen\* *intr.*

school year das Schul'jahr (-e)

schoolbook das Schul'buch (<sup>er</sup>)  
 schoolmate der Schul'kamerad (-en,  
 -en)

Schulze der Schul'ze

Schuster der Schu'ster

scratch frag'en *tr. or intr.*; (= scratch  
 up, mark with scratches) zerfrag'en  
*tr.*

scream der Schrei (-e)

seat: take a seat sich hin'setzen

seat set'en *tr.*; be seated sich setzen,  
 Platz nehmen\*

second *ord. num.* zweit

secure (= obtain) besom'men\* *tr.*

see se'hen\* *tr. or intr.*; (= go and  
 see, investigate) nach'sehen\* *intr.*;  
 see again wie'der'sehen\* *tr.*; see  
 through (= penetrate, fathom)  
 durchschau'en *tr.*

seem schei'nen\* *intr.*

sell verkauf'en *tr.*

send schick'en *tr.* (for, nach *dat.*), sen'  
 den\* *tr.*

sentence verur'teilen *tr.*

serious *adj.* (of a wound, an injury)  
 schwer

servant (= servant girl) das Dienst'  
 mädchen (-); servants (male and  
 female) die Dienst'boten (*pl.*)

servant girl das Dienst'mädchen (-)

set (of the sun) un'ter/gehen\* *intr.*  
 (sein); (a table) deck'en *tr.*

seven *card. num.* sieben

seventeen *card. num.* sieb'zehn

seventy-two *card. num.* zweiund'  
 sieb'zig

several *indef. pron. or adj.* meh'rere  
 (*pl.*)

severity die Streng'e

shake schüt'teln *tr.*

shall sol'len\* *mod. aux.*; *aux. of fut.*  
*tense* wer'den\*

sharp *adj.* scharf (<sup>er</sup>, <sup>st</sup>)

she *pers. pron.* sie (ih'rer, ihr, sie)

shine schei'nen\* *intr.*

shirt das Hemd (-en)

shoe der Schuh (-e)

shoe beschla'gen\* *tr.*

shoot schie'ßen\* *tr. or intr.*; shoot to  
 pieces zer'schie'ßen\* *tr.*

shop der La'den (<sup>n</sup>)

short *adj.* kurz (<sup>er</sup>, <sup>est</sup>)

should wür'de *or the past or pluperf.*

*subj. of the verb in question*: if I had  
 the time, I should go wenn ich Zeit  
 hätte, so würde ich gehen *or* so ginge  
 ich, if I had had the time, I should  
 have gone wenn ich Zeit gehabt  
 hätte, so würde ich gegangen sein  
*or* so wäre ich gegangen; (= ought  
 to) *past or pluperf. subj. of sollen\**  
*mod. aux.*: he should not do that  
 er sollte das nicht tun, he should  
 not have done that er hätte das nicht  
 tun sollen; (*expressing the imper-*  
*ative in indirect discourse*) *pres. or*  
*past subj. of sollen*: they said he  
 should be quiet sie sagten, er solle  
 (*or* sollte) ruhig sein

shoulder die Schul'ter (-n)

show zei'gen *tr.*; (appreciation) er-  
 wei'sen\* *tr.*

show window das Schau'fenster (-)

shrug zuck'en *tr. or intr.*; shrug the  
 shoulders die Ach'seln (*or* mit den  
 Ach'seln) zucken

sick *adj.* krank (<sup>er</sup>, <sup>st</sup>); very sick  
 schwer'krank, sehr krank

side die Sei'te (-n)

sigh der Seuf'zer (-)

sigh *seufzen intr.*

sight: be out of sight (= disappear)  
verschwin'den\* *intr.* (sein); catch  
sight of erblick'en *tr.*

since *subord. conj.* (of cause) da; (of  
time) seitdem'; *prep.* seit (*dat.*);  
since then seitdem' *adv.*

sing sing'en\* *tr. or intr.*

singer der Säng'er (-), die Säng'erin  
(-nen)

sink sink'en\* *intr.* (sein); sink down  
(= sit down) sich nie'derlassen\*

sister die Schwest'er (-n)

sit sit'en\* *intr.*; sit down sich set'en

sitting room das Wohn'zimmer (-)

six *card. num.* sechs

sixteen *card. num.* sechs'zehn

sixteenth *ord. num.* sechs'zehnt

sixty *card. num.* sechs'zig

sky der Him'mel (-)

slam zu'schlagen\* *tr.*

slay erschla'gen\* *tr.*

sleep schla'fen\* *intr.*; go to sleep ein'=  
schlafen\* *intr.* (sein)

sleeper (= sleeping car) der Schlaf'=  
wagen (-)

slow *adj.* lang'sam; be slow (of  
watches) nach'gehen\* *intr.* (sein)

sly *adj.* schlau, pfif'fig

small *adj.* klein

smart *adj.* klug ("er, "st)

smell rie'chen\* *tr. or intr.*

smile läch'eln *intr.*

smith der Schmied (-e)

Smith der Schmidt

smoke rau'chen *tr. or intr.*; smoke on  
wei'ter'rauchen *tr. or intr.*

smoking das Rau'chen

smooth *adj.* glatt

sneak sich schlei'chen\*

snow schnei'en *impers.*

so *adv.* so; (= therefore) al'so, und so

soap die Sei'fe (-n)

soft *adj.* (= yielding) weich; (= low,  
not loud) lei'se

soldier der Soldat' (-en, -en)

some *sg.* (= a small quantity) et'was

(*indecl.*) *indef. pron. or adj.*, wel'=

cher (welche, welches) *indef. pron.*;

*pl.* (= a few, several) ei'nige *indef.*

*pron. or adj.*, wel'che *indef. pron.*;

ein paar (*indecl.*) *indef. pron. or*

*adj.*; as *adj.* often *untranslated*:

did you bring some matches along

hast du Streich'hölzer mitgebracht;

some time ago vor einiger Zeit

somebody je'mand *indef. pron.*

something et'was(*indecl.*) *indef. pron.*

somewhere *adv.* ir'gendwo; some-  
where else wo an'ders

son der Sohn ("e)

soon 'adv. bald; as soon as *subord.*  
*conj.* sobald'

sorry *adj.* trau'rig; I am sorry es tut

mir leid; I am sorry for him es tut

mir leid um ihn *or* er tut mir leid;

I am sorry to say lei'der *adv.*

sort: all sorts of allerlei'(*indecl.*) *indef.*

*pron. or adj.*; all sorts of interest-

ing things allerlei' Interessan'tes

soul die See'le (-n)

soup die Sup'pe (-n)

soupbone der Sup'penknochen (-)

speak spre'chen\* *tr. or intr.* (about,  
über *acc.*); speak to (=see) spre-

chen\* *tr.*: may I speak to Mr. Smith

darf ich Herrn Schmidt sprechen;

speak to (= talk with) spre'chen\* mit

(*dat.*): I shall speak to him about it

ich werde mit ihm darüber sprechen

speech die Re'be (-n); make a speech  
eine Rede halten\*

spell buchstabie'ren *tr.*

spend (time) zu'bringen\* *tr.*, ver-  
bring'en\* *tr.*; (money) aus'geben\*  
*tr.*

splendid aus'gezeich'net *part. adj.*

spoil verder'ben\* *tr.*, or *intr.* (sein);  
(children) verwöh'nen *tr.*; spoilt (=

rotten, decayed) verdor'ben, faul

spring der Früh'ling (-e)

spy (= discover, catch sight of) er-  
blick'en *tr.*

stable der Stall ("e)

stamp the foot mit dem Fu'ße stamp'-  
fen *intr.*

stand ste'hen\* *intr.*

stare at an'fstarren *tr.*

start: make an early start sich früh  
auf den Weg mach'en

start: start back (= set out for home)  
den Rück'weg an'treten\*; start a  
conversation sich in ein Gespräch'  
ein'lassen\*

starved *part. adj.* verhung'ert

state der Staat (-en)

station (= depot) der Bahn'hof ("e)

stay blei'ben\* *intr.* (sein); stay in

after school nach'sißen\* *intr.*

steal steh'len\* *tr.* or *intr.*

step (= stair) die Stu'fe (-n); steps  
(= flight of stairs) die Trep'pe (-n)

step tre'ten\* *intr.* (sein)

stick steck'en *tr.* or *intr.*

still *adv.* (of time or degree) noch;  
(adversative) doch

stingy *adj.* geiz'ig

stock: in stock vor'rätig *adj.*

stomach der Ma'gen (-); stomach  
trouble das Ma'genleiden

stop an'halten\* *tr.* or *intr.*; (= cease)  
auf'hören *intr.*

store der La'den (")

storm stür'men *impers.*; storm up hin-  
auf'ra'sen *intr.* (sein)

story (= tale) die Geschich'te (-n);  
(= untruth) die Un'wahrheit (-en);  
(of a house) der Stock (-[e]); in  
the third story im zweiten Stock

stove der Of'en (")

stow away be'gen\* *tr.*

straight *adj.* gera'de

strange *adj.* frem'd

stranger der Frem'de (*adj. infl.*)

straw hat der Stroh'hut ("e)

street die Stra'ße (-n)

strike schla'gen\* *tr.*

strong *adj.* starr ("er, "st)

student (= pupil) der Schü'ler (-);  
(at a university) der Student' (-en,  
-en)

study (= room) das Studier'zim-  
mer (-)

study (in schools) ler'nen *tr.* or *intr.*;  
(at a university) studie'ren *tr.* or  
*intr.*

stupid *adj.* dumm ("er, "st)

succeed geling'en\* *intr.* (sein); I suc-  
ceed in doing it es gelingt mir, es  
zu tun

such *dem. pron.* or *adj.* sol'cher (solche,  
solches; solche); such a book solch  
ein Buch, ein solches Buch, so ein  
Buch

sudden *adj.* plö'zlich

suffer lei'den\* *tr.* or *intr.* (with, an  
dat.)

suit (of clothes) der An'zug ("e)

summer der Som'mer (-)

sun die Son'ne (-n)

**Sunday** der Sonn'tag (-e)  
**Sunday clothes** die Sonn'tagsklei-  
 der (*pl.*)  
**sunny** *adj.* son'nig  
**supper** das Abendessen (-); for  
 supper zum Abendessen  
**support** (a family) ernäh'ren *tr.* (on,  
 mit *dat.*)  
**sure** *adj.* gewiß'; I know for sure ich  
 weiß ganz sich'er; and sure enough  
*interj.* und rich'tig  
**surprise** die Überrasch'ung (-en)  
**surround** umge'ben\* *tr.*  
**Switzerland** die Schweiz

**table** der Tisch (-e)  
**tailor** der Schnei'der (-)  
**take** neh'men\* *tr.*; take a walk einen  
 Spazier'gang mach'en; take off (a  
 coat) aus'ziehen\* *tr.*; take off (a hat)  
 ab'nehmen\* *tr.*; take care of auf'=  
 passen (*intr.*) auf (*acc.*); take care  
 of oneself sich in acht neh'men\*  
**talk** sprech'en\* *intr.*, re'den *intr.*  
**tall** *adj.* (of persons) groß ("er, "t);  
 (= high) hoch, *when inflected* höh-  
 (hö'her, höchst)  
**taste** der Geschmack' ("e)  
**tattoo**: beat a tattoo mit den Ting'ern  
 trom'meln *intr.* (on, auf *dat.*)  
**tea** der Tee (-e or -s)  
**teacher** der Leh'rer (-), die Leh'rerin  
 (-nen)  
**telegraph post** die Telegra'phen-  
 stange (-n)  
**tell** sa'gen *tr. or intr.*; (= narrate)  
 erzäh'len *tr. or intr.* (about, von  
*dat.*)  
**ten** *card. num.* zehn  
**tenth** *ord. num.* zehnt

**terrible** *adj.* schreck'lich  
**Texas** das Tex'as  
**than** *subord. conj.* als  
**thank** dank'en *intr.* (*dat.*); no, thanks  
 danke  
**thankful** *adj.* dank'bar  
**that** *subord. conj.* daß; *rel. pron.* der  
 (die, das; die), wel'cher (welche,  
 welches; welche); *dem. pron. or adj.*  
 je'ner (jene, jenes; jene), der (die,  
 das; die); that one je'ner (jene,  
 jenes), der (die, das)  
**the** *def. art.* der (die, das; die);  
 the . . . the je . . . best'o; the  
 more . . . the better je mehr . . .  
 best'o bes'ser  
**theater** das Theater (-); at the  
 theater im Theater; to the theater  
 ins Theater  
**their** *poss. adj.* ihr (ih're, ihr; ih're)  
**theirs** *poss. pron.* ih'rer (ihre, ihres;  
 ihre), der ih're (die ihre, das ihre;  
 die ihren), der ih'rige (die ihrige,  
 das ihrige; die ihrigen)  
**them** *pers. pron.* ih'nen (*dat.*), sie  
 (*acc.*); they have no money with  
 them sie haben kein Geld bei sich  
**themselves** *refl. pron.* sich (*indecl.*);  
*intensive pron.* selbst (*indecl.*), sel's-  
 ber (*indecl.*)  
**then** *adv.* (= next, after that) dann;  
 (= at that time, referring to past  
 time) da'mals; (= in that case) da;  
 (*unemphatic*) denn: why did he say  
 so then warum hat er es denn ge-  
 sagt; (*introducing the conclusion*  
*of conditional sentences*) so: if that  
 is the case, then you must stay at  
 home wenn das der Fall ist, so  
 mußt du zu Hause bleiben

there *adv.* da, dort; (*expletive*) es  
 therefore *adv.* des'halb  
 thereupon *adv.* darauf  
 they *pers. pron.* sie (ih'rer, ih'nen, sie)  
 thief der Dieb (-e)  
 thimble der Zing'erhut (<sup>re</sup>)  
 think den'ken\* *tr. or intr.*; (= believe)  
     glau'ben *tr.*; (= reflect) sich bejin'  
     nen\*; think of (= have in mind)  
     denken\* an (*acc.*); think of (= have  
     an opinion of) denken\* von (*dat.*)  
 third (= third part) das Drit'tel (-)  
 third *ord. num.* dritt  
 thirty *card. num.* drei'ßig  
 thirty-seven *card. num.* siebenund-  
     drei'ßig  
 thirty-two *card. num.* zweiunddrei'-  
     ßig  
 this *dem. pron. or adj.* die'ser (diese,  
     dieses; diese); this one die'ser  
     (diese, dieses)  
 thousand *card. num.* tau'send; ten  
     thousand zehntau'send  
 threaten dro'hen *intr.* (*dat. of per-*  
     *son*)  
 three *card. num.* drei; three times  
     drei'mal; three times three drei  
     mal drei  
 throne der Thron (-e)  
 through *adj.* (= finished) fer'tig;  
     *prep.* durch (*acc.*)  
 throw wer'fen\* *tr.*; throw away  
     fort|werfen\* *tr.*, weg|werfen\* *tr.*  
 thrust the hand into the pocket in  
     die Tasch'e grei'fen\* *intr.*  
 Thursday der Don'nerstag (-e)  
 ticket (railway) die Fahr'karte (-n);  
     round-trip ticket die Rüd'fahrkarte  
     (-n); single-trip ticket ein'fache  
     Fahr'karte

ticket window der Schal'ter (-)  
 tie (= necktie) die Krawat'te (-n)  
 time (*of duration*) die Zeit (-en);  
     (*of repetition*) das Mal (-e); five  
     times fünf'mal; five times five fünf  
     mal fünf; every time je'desmal;  
     at that time (*referring to past time*)  
     zu der Zeit, da'mals; [for] a long  
     time lang'e *adv.*; have a good time  
     sich gut amüsie'ren  
 timid *adj.* schüch'tern  
 tired *adj.* mü'de  
 to *prep.* rendered by *dat.* without a  
     *prep.* when marking the indirect  
     object; (a person) zu (*dat.*); (a place)  
     nach (*dat.*); (an object) zu (*dat.*),  
     an (*acc.*); to school in die Schule,  
     zur Schule; to church in die Kirche,  
     zur Kirche; to the theater ins Thea-  
     ter; to bed zu Bett; to the railway  
     station (post office, bank, police  
     station, city hall, university) auf  
     den Bahnhof (die Post, die Bank,  
     das Polizei'amnt, das Rathaus, die  
     Universität'); (*before numerals*) bis  
     (*acc.*); (*before infin.*) zu; [in order]  
     to um . . . zu  
 to-day *adv.* heu'te  
 to-morrow *adv.* mor'gen  
 tone: in a low tone lei'se *adv.*  
 too *adv.* zu; (= also) auch  
 tooth der Zahn (<sup>re</sup>)  
 top (for spinning) der Krei'sel (-)  
 tough *adj.* zäh  
 toward *prep.* ge'gen (*acc.*)  
 town die Stadt (<sup>re</sup>); be down town  
     in der Stadt sein\*; to town in die  
     Stadt  
 toys die Spiel'sachen (*pl.*)  
 train der Zug (<sup>re</sup>)

translate überse<sup>t</sup>en *tr.*  
 travel rei<sup>s</sup>en *intr.* (sein)  
 traveler der Rei<sup>s</sup>ende (*adj. infl.*)  
 treat behan<sup>d</sup>eln *tr.*  
 tree der Baum (<sup>e</sup>)  
 triumphant frohlo<sup>c</sup>end *part. adj.*  
 trouble (= pains, labor) die Mü<sup>h</sup>e  
 (-n)

true *adj.* wahr  
 truth die Wahr<sup>h</sup>eit (-en)  
 try (= attempt) versu<sup>c</sup>hen *tr. or*  
*intr.*; (= test) probie<sup>r</sup>en *tr.*, ver<sup>s</sup>  
 su<sup>c</sup>hen *tr.*

Turkey die Tür<sup>k</sup>e<sup>i</sup>

turn: his turn came er kam an die  
 Rei<sup>h</sup>e

turn (= become) wer<sup>d</sup>en\* (sein)

twelve *card. num.* zwölf

twenty *card. num.* zwanzig

twenty-four *card. num.* vierund<sup>z</sup>  
 zwanzig

twenty-fourth *ord. num.* vierund<sup>z</sup>  
 zwanzigst

twenty-second *ord. num.* zweiund<sup>z</sup>  
 zwanzigst

twenty-six *card. num.* sechsund<sup>z</sup>  
 zwanzig

twice *adv.* zwei<sup>m</sup>al

two *card. num.* zwei; the two die  
 bei<sup>d</sup>en; which of the two wel<sup>c</sup>hes  
 von [den] bei<sup>d</sup>en

ugly *adj.* häß<sup>l</sup>ich

umbrella der Re<sup>g</sup>enschirm (-e)

uncle der On<sup>k</sup>el (-)

unconcernedly *adv.* mir nichts dir  
 nichts

unconscious *adj.* (= senseless) be<sup>w</sup>  
 ußt<sup>l</sup>os

under *prep.* un<sup>t</sup>er (*dat. or acc.*)

understand verste<sup>h</sup>en\* *tr.*

undertake unterneh<sup>m</sup>en\* *tr.*

undisturbed *part. adj.* ungestört<sup>r</sup>

undress sich aus<sup>z</sup>iehen\*

unexpected *part. adj.* unerwartet

unfortunately *adv.* lei<sup>d</sup>er

university die Univer<sup>s</sup>ität' (-en) (*pro-*  
*nounce v as w*)

until *prep.* biß (*acc.*); *subord. conj.* biß

untimely *adj.* früh<sup>z</sup>eitig

unusual *adj.* un<sup>g</sup>ewöhnlich

upon *prep.* auf (*dat. or acc.*)

urge dring<sup>e</sup>nd bit<sup>t</sup>en\* *tr.*

urgent dring<sup>e</sup>nd *part. adj.*

us *pers. pron.* un<sup>s</sup> (*dat. or acc.*)

use gebrau<sup>c</sup>hen *tr.*; use up verbrau<sup>c</sup>  
 chen *tr.*; get used to sich gewöh<sup>n</sup>en  
 an (*acc.*)

usual *adj.* gewöhn<sup>l</sup>ich

utter äu<sup>ß</sup>ern *tr.*; be unable to utter  
 a word kein Wort hervor<sup>z</sup>bringen\*  
 können\* *mod. aux.*

vase die Va<sup>s</sup>e (-n) (*pronounce V as*  
*W*)

verge: be on the verge of crying dem  
 Wei<sup>n</sup>en nahe sein\*

Versailles das Versaill<sup>e</sup>s (*pronounce*  
*as in French ver<sup>s</sup>aj*)

very *adv.* sehr

vex är<sup>g</sup>ern *tr.*; be vexed sich är<sup>g</sup>ern  
 (at, über *acc.*)

vexation der Verdruß<sup>z</sup>

Vienna das Wien

Vietor der Vi<sup>e</sup>tor (*pronounce V*  
*as W*)

vigorous *adj.* kräf<sup>t</sup>ig

village das Dorf (<sup>e</sup>r)

vinegar der Ess<sup>i</sup>g (-e)

visit besu<sup>c</sup>hen *tr.*

wait war'ten *intr.* (for, auf *acc.*)  
 waiting room das War'tezimmer (-)  
 wake up auf'wachen *tr.*, auf'wachen  
*intr.* (sein)  
 walk der Spazier'gang (<sup>u</sup>e); take a  
 walk einen Spazier'gang machen  
 walk ge'hen *intr.* (sein); walk back  
 and forth hin und her gehen\* (sein)  
 Wallenstein der Wal'lenstein  
 want wün'schen *tr.*, wol'len\* *tr.*;  
 want to wol'len\* *mod. aux.*  
 war der Krieg (-e)  
 warm *adj.* warm (<sup>u</sup>er, <sup>u</sup>ft)  
 warn war'nen *tr.*  
 wash wasch'en\* *tr. or intr.*  
 washerwoman die Wasch'frau (-en)  
 waste verschwen'den *tr.*  
 watch die [Tasch'en]uhr (-en)  
 watch (a receding object) nach'fse-  
 hen\* *intr.* (*dat.*)  
 water das Was'ser (-)  
 we *pers. pron.* wir (un'ser, uns, uns)  
 weak *adj.* schwach (<sup>u</sup>er, <sup>u</sup>ft)  
 wear tra'gen\* *tr.*; wear out ab'nüt-  
 zen *tr.* -  
 weather das Wet'ter (-)  
 Wednesday der Mitt'woch (-e)  
 weed das Un'kraut (<sup>u</sup>er); weeds (*col-*  
*lectively*) das Unkraut; the noble  
 weed (= tobacco) das edle Kraut  
 week die Woch'e (-n)  
 well *adj.* gesund'; *adv.* gut; *interj.*  
 nun; well known *part. adj.* be-  
 kannt'  
 west der West'en  
 what *interrog. pron.* was (weß'sen, -,  
 was); *interrog. adj.* wel'cher (wel-  
 che, welches; welche); *rel. pron.* was  
 (weß'sen, -, was); what a welch ein,  
 was für ein

wheat flour das Weizenmehl  
 wheel das Rad (<sup>u</sup>er)  
 when *subord. conj.* (of a single act  
 in definite past time) als; (with  
*pres. or fut. tense, or with any tense*  
*in sense of whenever*) wenn; *adv.*  
*or subord. conj.* (in direct or indi-  
 rect questions) wann  
 whenever *subord. conj.* wenn  
 where *adv. or subord. conj.* wo  
 whereupon *subord. conj.* worauf'  
 whether *subord. conj.* ob  
 which *interrog. pron. or adj.* wel'cher  
 (welche, welches; welche); *rel. pron.*  
 der (die, das; die), wel'cher (welche,  
 welches; welche); which one wel-  
 cher (welche, welches; welche)  
 while: for a while eine Zeit'lang  
 while *subord. conj.* wäh'rend  
 whisper flüst'ern *intr.*; whisper to  
 zu'flüstern *tr.* (*dat. of person*)  
 white *adj.* weiß  
 who *interrog. pron.* wer (weß'sen,  
 wem, wen); *rel. pron.* der (die, das;  
 die), wel'cher (welche, welches; wel-  
 che); he who wer (weß'sen, wem,  
 wen) *rel. pron.*  
 whoever *rel. pron.* wer (weß'sen, wem,  
 wen)  
 whole *indef. pron. or adj.* ganz  
 whose *interrog. pron.* weß'sen (*gen.*);  
*rel. pron.* des'sen (*gen. sg. masc. or*  
*neut.*), de'ren (*gen. sg. fem., or gen.*  
*pl. of all genders*)  
 why *adv. or subord. conj.* warum'  
 wife die Frau (-en)  
 wild *adj.* wild  
 will wol'len\* *mod. aux.*; (*aux. of*  
*fut. tense*) wer'den\*  
 William der Wil'helm

willing: be willing to wol'len\* *mod.*

*aux.*

win at cards sich (*dat.*) er'pie'len  
*tr.*

wind up (a clock) auf'ziehen\* *tr.*

window das Fen'ster (-)

windowpane die Fen'sterscheibe  
(-n)

wine der Wein (-e)

winter der Win'ter (-)

wish wün'schen *tr.*, wol'len\* *tr.*

with *prep.* mit (*dat.*); (= in the house  
of, in the service of) bei (*dat.*); he  
has no money with him er hat kein  
Geld bei sich

within *prep.* hin'nen (*dat.*)

without *prep.* oh'ne (*acc.*).

Wolf der Wolf

woman die Frau (-en)

wonder das Wun'der (-)

wonder sich mun'dern

wooing das Frei'en; when wooing  
beim Frei'en; go a wooing auf  
Frei'ersfüßen ge'hen\* *intr.* (sein)

word das Wort (*disconnected words*  
Wör'ter, *connected words* Wor'te)

work die Ar'beit (-en); be at work  
bei der Arbeit sein\*

work ar'beiten *intr.*

world die Welt (-en)

worry die Sor'ge (-n)

worth *adj.* wert; how much is that  
hat worth was kostet der Gut

worthy *adj.* (= honest, upright)  
brav

would würde *or the past or pluperf.*  
*subj. of the verb in question*: if  
he had the time, he would go wenn  
er Zeit hätte, so würde er gehen  
*or so* ginge er, if he had had the

time, he would have gone wenn er  
Zeit gehabt hätte, so würde er ge-  
gangen sein *or so* wäre er gegangen;  
(= want to) wol'len\* *mod. aux.*:  
he would not do it because it was  
too late er wollte es nicht tun,  
weil es zu spät war; (*denoting*  
*habitual action*) *past indicative*  
*of the verb in question*: when he  
had the time he would go wenn  
er Zeit hatte, so ging er; (*in in-*  
*direct discourse*) *fut. subj., or*  
*conditional*: he said he would  
come er sagte, er werde (*or* würde)  
kommen

wrap up ein'wickeln *tr.*

write schrei'ben\* *tr. or intr.* (to, an  
*acc.*); he wrote me that er schrieb  
mir, daß; make a mistake in writ-  
ing sich verschrei'ben\*; write down  
nie'der schreiben\* *tr.*

wrong: be wrong un'recht ha'ben\*  
Württemberg das Würt'temberg

yard gate das Hof'tor (-e)

yawn gäh'nen *intr.*

year das Jahr (-e)

yes *adv.* ja

yesterday *adv.* gest'ern

yet (*adversative*) doch *adv.*; (*tem-*  
*poral*) noch *adv.*; not yet noch  
nicht; never . . . yet noch nie

you *pers. pron.* du (dei'ner, dir, dich),  
ihr (eu'er, euch, euch), Sie (Sh'rer,  
Sh'nen, Sie)

young *adj.* jung ("er, "ft)

youngster der Jung'e (-n, -n); the  
dirty youngster der kleine Schmutz-  
fink (*gen.* -en, *dat. and acc.* -en  
*or* -, *pl.* -en)

**your** *poss. adj.* dein (dei'ne, dein; dei'ne), eu'er (eu[e]re, euer; eu[e]re), Ihr (Ih're, Ihr; Ih're)

**yours** *poss. pron.* dei'ner (deine, dein[e]ß; deine), der dei'ne (die deine, daß deine; die deinen), der dei'nige (die deinige, daß deinige; die deinigen); eu'[e]rer (eu[e]re, eu[e]reß; eu[e]re), der eu'[e]re (die eu[e]re, daß eu[e]re; die eu[e]ren), der eu'rige (die eurige, daß eurige; die eurigen); Ihr'er

(Ihre, Ihres; Ihre), der Ih're (die Ihre, daß Ihre; die Ihren), der Ih'rige (die Ihrige, daß Ihrige; die Ihrigen); *in pred. expressing ownership simply* dein (*indecl.*), euer (*indecl.*)

**yourself** *refl. pron.* dir (*dat.*), dich (*acc.*); euch (*dat. or acc.*); sich (*indecl.*); *intensive pron.* selbst (*indecl.*), sel'ber (*indecl.*)

zoölogical garden der Tier'garten (")



## STRONG AND IRREGULAR VERBS

Compounds are given only in case the simple verb is not in use or is weak.

The second and third person singular of the present indicative and the second person singular of the imperative are given when their stem differs from the stem of the present infinitive.

### STRONG VERBS

| INFINITIVE       | PRES. INDIC.<br>2D AND 3D SING. | IMPERATIVE<br>2D SING. | PAST INDIC.<br>1ST SING. | PAST SUBJ.<br>1ST SING. | PAST PART. |
|------------------|---------------------------------|------------------------|--------------------------|-------------------------|------------|
| <b>backen</b>    | bäckst, bäckt                   |                        | <b>back</b>              | bäke                    | gebacken   |
| <b>befehlen</b>  | befiehlst, befiehlt             | befiehl                | befahl                   | beföhle                 | befohlen   |
| <b>beginnen</b>  |                                 |                        | begann                   | begönne                 | begonnen   |
| <b>beißen</b>    |                                 |                        | biß                      | bisse                   | gebissen   |
| <b>bergen</b>    | birgst, birgt                   | birg                   | barg                     | bürge or<br>bürge       | geborgen   |
| <b>biegen</b>    |                                 |                        | bog                      | böge                    | gebogen    |
| <b>bieten</b>    |                                 |                        | bot                      | böte                    | geboten    |
| <b>binden</b>    |                                 |                        | band                     | bände                   | gebunden   |
| <b>bitten</b>    |                                 |                        | bat                      | bäte                    | gebeten    |
| <b>blasen</b>    | bläsest or bläst, bläst         |                        | blies                    | bließe                  | geblasen   |
| <b>bleiben</b>   |                                 |                        | blieb                    | bliebe                  | geblieben  |
| <b>braten</b>    | brätst, brät                    |                        | briet                    | briete                  | gebraten   |
| <b>brechen</b>   | brichst, bricht                 | brich                  | brach                    | bräche                  | gebrochen  |
| <b>dringen</b>   |                                 |                        | drang                    | dränge                  | gedrungen  |
| <b>empfehlen</b> | empfiehlst, empfiehlt           | empfiehl               | empfohl                  | empföhle                | empfohlen  |
| <b>essen</b>     | isstest or ißt, ißt             | iß                     | aß                       | äße                     | geessen    |
| <b>fahren</b>    | fährst, fährt                   |                        | fuhr                     | führe                   | gefahren   |
| <b>fallen</b>    | fällst, fällt                   |                        | fiel                     | fiele                   | gefallen   |
| <b>fangen</b>    | fängst, fängt                   |                        | fieng                    | finge                   | gefangen   |
| <b>suchen</b>    | sichst, sucht                   | sucht                  | sucht                    | söchte                  | gesuchten  |
| <b>finden</b>    |                                 |                        | fand                     | fände                   | gefunden   |

| INFINITIVE          | PRES. INDIC.<br>2D AND 3D SING. | IMPERATIVE<br>2D SING. | PAST INDIC.<br>1ST SING. | PAST SUBJ.<br>1ST SING. | PAST PART. |
|---------------------|---------------------------------|------------------------|--------------------------|-------------------------|------------|
| fliegen             |                                 |                        | flog                     | flöge                   | geflogen   |
| fliehen             |                                 |                        | floh                     | flöhe                   | geflohen   |
| fließen             |                                 |                        | floß                     | flöffe                  | geflossen  |
| fressen             | frißest or frißt, frißt         | friß                   | fraß                     | fräße                   | gefressen  |
| frieren             |                                 |                        | fror                     | fröre                   | gefroren   |
| gebären             | gebierst, gebiert               | gebier                 | gebar                    | gebäre                  | geboren    |
| geben               | gibst, gibt                     | gib                    | gab                      | gäbe                    | gegeben    |
| gedeihen            |                                 |                        | gedieh                   | gediehe                 | gediehen   |
| gehen               |                                 |                        | ging                     | ginge                   | gegangen   |
| gelingen            |                                 |                        | gelang                   | gelänge                 | gelungen   |
| gelten              | giltst, gilt                    | gilt                   | galt                     | gölte                   | gegolten   |
| genesen             |                                 |                        | genas                    | genäse                  | genesen    |
| genießen            |                                 |                        | genosß                   | genöffe                 | genossen   |
| geschehen           | geschieht                       |                        | geschah                  | geschehe                | geschehen  |
| gewinnen            |                                 |                        | gewann                   | gewönne                 | gewonnen   |
| gießen              |                                 |                        | goß                      | göße                    | gegossen   |
| gleich              |                                 |                        | glich                    | gliehe                  | geglichen  |
| gleiten             |                                 |                        | glitt                    | glitte                  | geglichen  |
| graben              | gräbst, gräbt                   |                        | grub                     | grübe                   | gegraben   |
| greifen             |                                 |                        | griff                    | griffe                  | gegriffen  |
| halten              | hältst, hält                    |                        | hielt                    | hielte                  | gehalten   |
| hängen or<br>hängen | hängst, hängt                   |                        | hing                     | hinge                   | gehangen   |
| hauen               |                                 |                        | hieb                     | hiebe                   | gehauen    |
| heben               |                                 |                        | hob                      | höbe or hübe            | gehoben    |
| heißen              |                                 |                        | hieß                     | hieße                   | geheißen   |
| helfen              | hilfst, hilft                   | hilf                   | half                     | hülfe                   | geholfen   |
| kommen              |                                 |                        | kam                      | käme                    | gekommen   |
| klingen             |                                 |                        | klang                    | klänge                  | geklingen  |
| kneifen             |                                 |                        | kniß                     | kniße                   | gekneifen  |
| kommen              |                                 |                        | kam                      | käme                    | gekommen   |
| kriechen            |                                 |                        | kroch                    | kröche                  | gekrochen  |
| laden               | lädst, lädt                     |                        | lud                      | lüde                    | geladen    |

einladen (*invite*) is also weak except in the past participle

|        |                       |      |       |          |
|--------|-----------------------|------|-------|----------|
| lassen | lässest or läßt, läßt | ließ | ließe | gelassen |
| laufen | läufst, läuft         | lief | liefe | gelaufen |
| leiden |                       | litt | litte | gelitten |
| leihen |                       | lieh | liehe | geliehen |

| INFINITIVE | PRES. INDIC.<br>2D AND 3D SING.     | IMPERATIVE<br>2D SING. | PAST INDIC.<br>1ST SING. | PAST SUBJ.<br>1ST SING. | PAST PART.  |
|------------|-------------------------------------|------------------------|--------------------------|-------------------------|-------------|
| lesen      | liesest or ließt, ließt             | lies                   | las                      | läse                    | gelesen     |
| liegen     |                                     |                        | lag                      | läge                    | gelegen     |
| löſchen    | liſcheſt or liſchſt, liſcht         | liſch                  | loſch                    | löſche                  | geloſchen   |
| lügen      |                                     |                        | log                      | löge                    | gelogen     |
| meiden     |                                     |                        | mied                     | miede                   | gemieden    |
| meſſen     | miſſeſt or mißt, mißt               | miß                    | maß                      | mäße                    | gemeſſen    |
| nehmen     | nimmſt, nimmi                       | nimm                   | nahm                     | nähme                   | genommen    |
| pfeifen    |                                     |                        | pfiß                     | pfiſſe                  | gepfiſſen   |
| pflügen    |                                     |                        | pflug                    | pflöge                  | gepflügen   |
| preiſen    |                                     |                        | prieß                    | prieſe                  | geprieſen   |
| raten      | rätſt, rät                          |                        | riet                     | riete                   | geraten     |
| reiben     |                                     |                        | rieb                     | riebe                   | gerieben    |
| reißen     |                                     |                        | riß                      | riſſe                   | geriſſen    |
| reiten     |                                     |                        | ritt                     | ritte                   | geritten    |
| riechen    |                                     |                        | roch                     | röche                   | gerochen    |
| ringen     |                                     |                        | rang                     | ränge                   | gernungen   |
| rinnen     |                                     |                        | rann                     | ränne or<br>rönne       | geronnen    |
| rufen      |                                     |                        | rief                     | riefe                   | gerufen     |
| ſaufen     | ſäufſt, ſäuft                       |                        | ſoff                     | ſöſſe                   | geſoffen    |
| ſaugen     |                                     |                        | ſog                      | ſöge                    | geſogen     |
| ſchaffen   |                                     |                        | ſchuß                    | ſchüſſe                 | geſchaffen  |
| ſcheiden   |                                     |                        | ſchied                   | ſchiede                 | geſchieden  |
| ſcheinen   |                                     |                        | ſchien                   | ſchiene                 | geſchienen  |
| ſchelten   | ſchiltſt, ſchilt                    | ſchilt                 | ſchalt                   | ſchölte                 | geſcholten  |
| ſcheren    | ſchierſt, ſchiert                   | ſchier                 | ſchor                    | ſchöre                  | geſchoren   |
| ſchieben   |                                     |                        | ſchob                    | ſchöbe                  | geſchoben   |
| ſchießen   |                                     |                        | ſchoß                    | ſchöſſe                 | geſchoſſen  |
| ſchlafen   | ſchläſſt, ſchläft                   |                        | ſchlieſ                  | ſchlieſe                | geſchlafen  |
| ſchlagen   | ſchlägſt, ſchlägt                   |                        | ſchlug                   | ſchlüge                 | geſchlagen  |
| ſchleichen |                                     |                        | ſchlich                  | ſchliche                | geſchlichen |
| ſchleifen  |                                     |                        | ſchliß                   | ſchliſſe                | geſchliſſen |
| ſchließen  |                                     |                        | ſchloß                   | ſchlöſſe                | geſchloſſen |
| ſchlingen  |                                     |                        | ſchlang                  | ſchlänge                | geſchlungen |
| ſchmelzen  | ſchmilzeſt or ſchmilzt,<br>ſchmilzt | ſchmilz                | ſchmolz                  | ſchmölze                | geſchmolzen |
| ſchneiden  |                                     |                        | ſchnitt                  | ſchnitte                | geſchnitten |
| ſchrecken  | ſchrickſt, ſchrickt                 | ſchrick                | ſchrak                   | ſchräke                 | geſchrocken |
| ſchreiben  |                                     |                        | ſchrieb                  | ſchriebe                | geſchrieben |

| INFINITIVE | PRES. INDIC.<br>2D AND 3D SING.   | IMPERATIVE<br>2D SING. | PAST INDIC.<br>1ST SING. | PAST SUBJ.<br>1ST SING. | PAST PART.  |
|------------|-----------------------------------|------------------------|--------------------------|-------------------------|-------------|
| schreiben  |                                   |                        | schrieb                  | schriebe                | geschrieben |
| schreiten  |                                   |                        | schritt                  | schrritte               | geschritten |
| schweigen  |                                   |                        | schwiege                 | schwiege                | geschwiegen |
| schwellen  | schwollst, schwollt               | schwill                | schwoll                  | schwölle                | geschwollen |
| schwimmen  |                                   |                        | schwamm                  | schwämme                | geschwommen |
| schwinden  |                                   |                        | schwand                  | schwände                | geschwunden |
| schwören   |                                   |                        | schwur or<br>schwor      | schwüre                 | geschworen  |
| sehen      | siehst, sieht                     | sieh                   | sah                      | sähe                    | gesehen     |
| sein       | bist, ist                         | sei                    | war                      | wäre                    | gewesen     |
| singen     |                                   |                        | sang                     | sänge                   | gesungen    |
| sinken     |                                   |                        | sank                     | sänke                   | gesunken    |
| sinnen     |                                   |                        | sann                     | sänne or<br>sönne       | gesonnen    |
| sitzen     |                                   |                        | sass                     | säße                    | gesessen    |
| spinnen    |                                   |                        | spann                    | spönnne                 | gesponnen   |
| sprechen   | sprichst, spricht                 | sprich                 | sprach                   | spräche                 | gesprochen  |
| springen   |                                   |                        | sprang                   | spränge                 | gesprungen  |
| stechen    | stichst, sticht                   | stich                  | stach                    | stäche                  | gestochen   |
| stehen     |                                   |                        | stand                    | stände or<br>stünde     | gestanden   |
| stehlen    | stiehlst, stiehlt                 | stiehl                 | stahl                    | stöhle or<br>stähle     | gestohlen   |
| steigen    |                                   |                        | stieg                    | stiege                  | gestiegen   |
| sterben    | stirbst, stirbt                   | stirb                  | starb                    | stürbe                  | gestorben   |
| stoßen     | stößest or stößt, stößt           |                        | stieß                    | stieße                  | gestoßen    |
| streichen  |                                   |                        | strich                   | striche                 | gestrichen  |
| streiten   |                                   |                        | stritt                   | stritte                 | gestritten  |
| tragen     | trägst, trägt                     |                        | trug                     | trüge                   | getragen    |
| treffen    | triffst, trifft                   | triff                  | traf                     | träfe                   | getroffen   |
| treiben    |                                   |                        | trieb                    | triebe                  | getrieben   |
| treten     | trittst, tritt                    | tritt                  | trat                     | träte                   | getreten    |
| trinken    |                                   |                        | trank                    | tränke                  | getrunken   |
| trügen     |                                   |                        | trog                     | tröge                   | getrogen    |
| tun        |                                   |                        | that                     | täte                    | getan       |
| verderben  | verdirbst, verdirbt               | verdirb                | verdarb                  | verdürbe                | verdorben   |
| verdrücken |                                   |                        | verdroß                  | verdröße                | verdrössen  |
| vergessen  | vergiffest or vergißt,<br>vergibt | vergiß                 | vergaß                   | vergäße                 | vergeffen   |

| INFINITIVE | PRES. INDIC.<br>2D AND 3D SING. | IMPERATIVE<br>2D SING. | PAST INDIC.<br>1ST SING. | PAST SUBJ.<br>1ST SING. | PAST PART. |
|------------|---------------------------------|------------------------|--------------------------|-------------------------|------------|
| verlieren  |                                 |                        | verlor                   | verlöre                 | verloren   |
| wachsen    | wächstest or wächst,<br>wächst  |                        | wuchs                    | wüchse                  | gewachsen  |
| wägen      |                                 |                        | wog                      | wöge                    | gewogen    |
| waschen    | wäschest or wäscht,<br>wäscht   |                        | wusch                    | wüschse                 | gewaschen  |
| weichen    |                                 |                        | wich                     | wiche                   | gewichen   |
| weisen     |                                 |                        | wies                     | wiese                   | gewiesen   |
| werben     | wirbst, wirbt                   | wirb                   | warb                     | würbe                   | geworben   |
| werden     | wirst, wird                     |                        | wurde                    | würde                   | geworden   |
| werfen     | wirfst, wirft                   | wirf                   | warf                     | würfe                   | geworfen   |
| wiegen     |                                 |                        | wog                      | wöge                    | gewogen    |
| winden     |                                 |                        | wand                     | wände                   | gewunden   |
| zeichnen   |                                 |                        | zieh                     | ziehe                   | gezeichnet |
| ziehen     |                                 |                        | zog                      | zöge                    | gezogen    |
| zwingen    |                                 |                        | zwang                    | zwänge                  | gezwungen  |

## IRREGULAR WEAK VERBS

|         |           |  |                      |         |                        |
|---------|-----------|--|----------------------|---------|------------------------|
| brennen |           |  | braunte              | brennte | gebrannt               |
| fennen  |           |  | faunte               | fennte  | gefammt                |
| nennen  |           |  | nannte               | nennte  | genannt                |
| rennen  |           |  | rannte               | rennte  | gerannt                |
| senden  |           |  | saunte or<br>sendete | sendete | gesandt or<br>gesendet |
| wenden  |           |  | wandte or<br>wendete | wendete | gewandt or<br>gewendet |
| bringen |           |  | brachte              | brächte | gebracht               |
| denken  |           |  | dachte               | dächte  | gedacht                |
| haben   | hast, hat |  | hatte                | hätte   | gehabt                 |

## MODAL AUXILIARIES AND wissen

|        |              |         |        |        |                   |
|--------|--------------|---------|--------|--------|-------------------|
| dürfen | darfst, darf | wanting | durfte | dürfte | gedurft or dürfen |
| können | kannst, kann | wanting | konnte | könnte | gekönnt or können |
| mögen  | magst, mag   | wanting | mochte | möchte | gemocht or mögen  |
| müssen | mußt, muß    | wanting | mußte  | müßte  | gemußt or müssen  |
| sollen | sollst, soll | wanting | sollte | sollte | gesollt or sollen |
| wollen | willst, will | wolle   | wollte | wollte | gewollt or wollen |
| wissen | weißt, weiß  | wisse   | wußte  | wüßte  | gewußt            |



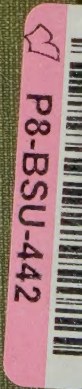












P8-BSU-442